Some pages of this thesis may have been removed for copyright restrictions.

If you have discovered material in Aston Research Explorer which is unlawful e.g. breaches copyright, (either yours or that of a third party) or any other law, including but not limited to those relating to patent, trademark, confidentiality, data protection, obscenity, defamation, libel, then please read our Takedown policy and contact the service immediately (openaccess@aston.ac.uk)
A MODEL OF DELTA FREQUENCY NEURONAL NETWORK ACTIVITY AND THETA-GAMMA INTERACTIONS IN RAT SENSORIMOTOR CORTEX IN VITRO

Swetha Sri Kalyanapu

Doctor of Philosophy

Aston University

June 2017

©Swetha S Kalyanapu

Swetha Kalyanapu asserts her moral right to be identified as the author of this thesis.

This copy of the thesis has been supplied on condition that anyone who consults it is understood to recognise that its copyright rests with its author and that no quotation from the thesis and no information derived from it may be published without appropriate permission or acknowledgement.
A MODEL OF DELTA FREQUENCY NEURONAL NETWORK ACTIVITY AND THETA-GAMMA INTERACTIONS IN RAT SENSORIMOTOR CORTEX IN VITRO

Swetha Sri Kalyanapu
Doctor of Philosophy, 2017

In recent decades, advances in electrophysiological techniques have enabled understanding of neuronal network activity, with in vitro brain slices providing insights into the mechanisms underlying oscillations at various frequency ranges. Understanding the electrical and neuro-pharmacological properties of brain networks using selective receptor modulators in native tissue allows to compare such properties with those in disease models (e.g. epilepsy and Parkinson’s). In vivo and in vitro studies have implicated M1 in execution of voluntary movements and, from both local network in vitro and whole brain in vivo perspectives. M1 has been shown to generate oscillatory activity at various frequencies, including beta frequency and nested theta and gamma oscillations similar to those of rat hippocampus. In vivo studies also confirmed slow wave oscillations in somatosensory cortex including delta and theta band activity. However, despite these findings, non-thalamic mechanisms underlying cortical delta oscillations remain almost unexplored. Therefore, we determined to explore these oscillations in vitro in M1 and S1.

Using a modified sagittal plane slice preparation with aCSF containing neuroprotectants, we have greatly improved brain slice viability, enabling the generation and study of dual rhythms (theta and gamma oscillations) in deep layers (LV) of the in vitro sensorimotor slice (M1 and S1) in the presence of KA and CCh. We found that theta-gamma activity in M1 is led by S1 and that the amplitude of gamma oscillations was (phase-amplitude) coupled to theta phase in both regions. Oscillations were dependent on GABA_A, AMPAR and NMDAR and were augmented by DAR activation. Experiments using cut/reduced slices showed both M1 and S1 could be intrinsic generators of oscillatory activity.

Delta oscillations were induced in M1 and S1 by maintaining a neuromodulatory state mimicking deep sleep, characterised by low dopaminergic and low cholinergic tone, achieved using DAR blockade and low CCh. Delta activity depends on GABA_A, GABA_B and AMPAR but not NMDAR, and once induced was not reversible. Unlike theta-gamma activity, delta was led by M1, and activity took >20mins to develop in S1 after establishment of peak power in M1. Unlike M1, S1 alone was unable to support delta activity.

Dopamine modulates network activity in M1 and it is known that fast-spiking interneurons are the pacemakers of network rhythmogenesis. Recent studies reported that dopamine (DA) controled I_{tonic} in medium spiny, ventrobasal thalamus and nucleus accumbens neurons by modulation of GABARs or cation channels. In the current study, voltage-clamp whole cell recordings were performed in fast spiking interneurons (FS cells) in Layer V of M1. These recordings revealed tonic and phasic GABA_A inhibition and when DA was bath applied, a slow inward current (I_{DA}) was induced. I_{DA} was mediated by non-specific cationic TRPC channels following D2R-like receptor activation.

Overall, my studies show the strong interdependence of theta-gamma rhythmogenesis between M1 and S1, dominanace of M1 at delta frequency and the crucial role of dopamine in controlling FS cell activity. Further exploration of these rhythms in models of pathological conditions such as Parkinson’s disease and Epilepsy may provide insights into network changes underlying these disease conditions.

**Keywords:** oscillations, delta, theta and gamma, PAC, dopamine, interneurons.
Dedication

This thesis is dedicated to my beloved father, Mohan Rao and my loving husband, Uday Kiran.

My father has always been my strength and confidence since my childhood. Everything my mum and dad taught me is invaluable and made me a person who I am today. This would have been a most special and a proud moment if he had been with us. How I miss him but I do feel proud to be a daughter of someone who is still remembered by thousands of people for his kindness, love, care not least his great sense of humour even after 9 years of passing. Your memories stay with us for ever dad! Thank you for looking after me as a princess and giving us the best of everything.

Equally my husband has been an immense support and has been by my side ever since we were married. He dedicated his time and effort to enable me to do masters as well as PhD. I remember days when he used to work 20 hours a day with couple of hours sleep to pay my tuition fee. You walked on a thorny path whilst letting me walk on flowers for which am forever indebted. Surely, I would not have done this without your constant encouragement, motivation, care and support both spiritually and financially. `Thanks` will be too little to acknowledge what you have done.
Acknowledgements

First and foremost, I thank The Lord, Almighty for all His provisions! I would like to express my deepest gratitude to Prof Gavin Woodhall, who has been an amazing supervisor. I am thankful for his pastoral care, support, understanding, patience, kindness, enthusiasm in research and not least his sense of humour. Gav, I can have you as my boss for lifetime. A big thank you goes to my associate supervisor, Prof Ian Stanford for his passion for science, motivation and insightful feedback. Stan, I should admit, after struggling for weeks it was that one day when you taught me was when I first got the hang of patching for which I am grateful. I extend my thanks to Dr Stuart Greenhill for his constant encouragement during writing up time and for his always willing to help nature.

My appreciation extends to lab mates Tamara, Jane, Nick, Darshna, Ben, Serena, Mazhar, Emma and Sukhe. Thanks for helping me to learn stuff like dissection, analysis, making figures and making my PhD journey so enjoyable. Thanks for all the wonderful memories we made together at lab conferences as well as lab-out meals, parties, birthdays, cake, tea and curry times we shared. I would like to thank the bio-medical facility staff; Wayne, Jeffery, Matt and Kat for their prompt arrangement of animals for us. I would also like to thank Gill and Caroline for all the admin support by providing numerous letters when needed.

My sincere thanks goes to everyone at Slade Assembly as well as all the brothers and sisters for their prayerful support. A special thanks to Mrs Lee (our mum in Britain) who has been an immense blessing, Nigel for being a spiritual and financial support and Sarah for putting up with many unkept promises.

I am thankful to all my family members and friends both in India and in the UK for their constant support, encouragement and understanding. Special thanks to Savvy for your great help and Radhika for your ongoing care. Appreciate support from Dheeraj, Pavan, and Pradeep.

I am deeply grateful to mother-in-law, father-in-law and brother-in-law (Vijay) for their great support. I express my gratitude to my sweet sister, (Shilpa Satish) for helping me with formatting, my lovely brother (Bharath Lavanya) for your constant encouragement and grandparents for their countless sacrifices. Special thanks to grandad (MHR) for being passionate about education and providing us a car so that we can get to the best school. It was inspiring when he said that I should focus on my PhD and not worry about his passing. Other grandad (VRK) has been our great pillar of support in raising us. Words cannot express how grateful I am to my ever-cheerful mother for all the moral and intellectual education received from her for which am forever indebted. Thanks mum and mum-in-law for lending your ears whenever I needed. Again, thanks to my dear husband for all his dedication in helping me to finish my thesis. I am greatly blessed with a wonderful family and they are all part of my success.
Table of Contents

Dedication .......................................................................................................................... 3
Acknowledgements .......................................................................................................... 4
Table of figures .................................................................................................................. 10
Table of tables .................................................................................................................. 13
Abbreviations ................................................................................................................... 14
1 Introduction ....................................................................................................................... 19
  1.1 Brain rhythms ............................................................................................................. 20
    1.1.1 Neuronal contribution to the LFP ...................................................................... 20
  1.2 Gamma oscillations ................................................................................................... 23
    1.2.1 Mechanistic aspects of gamma oscillatory activity ........................................ 23
    1.2.2 ING ................................................................................................................... 24
    1.2.3 PING ................................................................................................................ 24
    1.2.4 Evidence for ING and PING in vivo and in vitro ........................................... 25
  1.3 Theta oscillations ...................................................................................................... 25
  1.4 Phase-amplitude coupling (PAC) ............................................................................. 26
  1.5 Oscillatory patterns during sleep .............................................................................. 28
  1.6 Delta oscillations and sleep ..................................................................................... 29
    1.6.1 Thalamic delta oscillations .............................................................................. 30
    1.6.2 Cortical delta oscillations .............................................................................. 31
  1.7 Primary motor cortex (M1) ..................................................................................... 31
    1.7.1 Layer I .............................................................................................................. 32
    1.7.2 Layer II/III ...................................................................................................... 32
    1.7.3 Layer IV .......................................................................................................... 33
    1.7.4 Layer V .......................................................................................................... 33
    1.7.5 Layer VI .......................................................................................................... 33
  1.8 Cortico-cortical and sub-cortical connections ....................................................... 34
  1.9 Intrinsic laminar organisation of M1 in rats ......................................................... 34
  1.10 Primary somatosensory cortex (S1) ................................................................. 35
    1.10.1 Layer I .......................................................................................................... 35
    1.10.2 Layer II/III .................................................................................................... 35
    1.10.3 Layer IV ........................................................................................................ 35
    1.10.4 Layer V ........................................................................................................ 36
    1.10.5 Layer VI ........................................................................................................ 36
  1.11 Sensorimotor circuit .............................................................................................. 36
  1.12 Types of cells in cortex ......................................................................................... 37
    1.12.1 Pyramidal cells ............................................................................................. 37
3.2.3 iGluR modulation of theta and gamma oscillations ........................................ 73
3.2.4 Dopamine modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 ........... 82
3.2.5 Summary of results .......................................................................................... 88
3.3 Correlation and Phase-amplitude coupling studies ............................................. 89
  3.3.1 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type A .. 90
  3.3.2 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type B .. 92
  3.3.3 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type C .. 94
  3.3.4 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type D .. 95
  3.3.5 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type E .. 96
  3.3.6 Comparison of modulation index in various slice types ................................ 96
3.3 Discussion ........................................................................................................... 98
  3.3.1 KA and CCh induced oscillations in M1 and S1 ............................................. 99
  3.3.2 Role of KA and CCh in oscillatory activity ................................................... 100
  3.3.3 GABA\textsubscript{A}R modulation ................................................................. 100
  3.3.4 Glutamate modulation .................................................................................. 101
  3.3.5 DA and AMPH modulation .......................................................................... 102
  3.3.6 Possible mechanism of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 .......... 104
3.4 M1 and S1 interactions in various types of slice preparations ............................ 104
  3.4.1 Correlation studies .................................................................................... 104
  3.4.2 Phase-amplitude coupling (PAC) studies .................................................... 106
3.5 Final conclusions ................................................................................................. 108
4 Characterisation of pharmacologically induced delta oscillations is LV of primary motor cortex (M1) .......................................................... 109
  4.1 Introduction ...................................................................................................... 110
    4.1.1 Neurochemical aspects of the sleep-wake cycle ....................................... 110
    4.1.2 Significance of delta oscillations .............................................................. 111
  4.2. Pharmacology of delta oscillations in M1. ..................................................... 113
    4.2.1 Pharmacological induction of delta oscillations in M1 ............................. 113
    4.2.2 Laminar studies of delta oscillations through M1 .................................... 115
    4.2.3 Cholinergic modulation of delta oscillations ............................................ 117
    4.2.4 Gap junction modulation of delta oscillations ......................................... 118
    4.2.5 GABA\textsubscript{A}R modulation of delta oscillations ............................... 119
    4.2.6 GABA\textsubscript{B}R modulation of delta oscillations ............................... 121
    4.2.7 iGluR modulation of delta oscillations ..................................................... 122
    4.2.8 mGluR modulation of delta oscillations .................................................. 125
    4.2.9 Pharmacological equivalent awake state: delta reversal protocol .......... 130
    4.2.10 Summary of results ............................................................................... 139
  4.3 Discussion ......................................................................................................... 141
    4.3.1 Generation of delta oscillations ............................................................... 141
4.3.2 Origin of delta oscillations ................................................................. 143
4.3.3 Muscarinic receptor modulation ......................................................... 145
4.3.4 Gap junctions .................................................................................... 145
4.3.5 GABA modulation ............................................................................ 146
4.3.6 Glutamate modulation ...................................................................... 147
4.3.7 Pharmacological equivalent awake state: delta reversal protocol ...... 149
4.3.8 Possible mechanism of delta oscillations in M1 ............................... 151
4.3.9 Final conclusions ............................................................................. 152

5. Characterisation of delta oscillations in S1 and interaction between M1 and S1 at delta frequency ................................................................. 153

5.1 Introduction .......................................................................................... 154
5.2 Pharmacology of delta oscillations in S1 .............................................. 156
5.2.1 Pharmacological induction of delta oscillations in LV of S1 .............. 156
5.2.2 Cholinergic modulation of delta oscillations in LV of S1 .................. 158
5.2.3 GABArR modulation of delta oscillations in LV of S1 ....................... 159
5.2.4 iGluR modulation of delta oscillations in LV of S1 .......................... 160
5.2.5 Summary of results .......................................................................... 162
5.3 M1-S1 interactions at delta frequency ................................................. 163
5.3.1 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type A ..................... 163
5.3.2 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type B ..................... 165
5.3.3 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type C ..................... 166
5.3.4 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type D ..................... 167
5.3.5 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type E ..................... 168
5.4 Discussion ........................................................................................... 170
5.4.1 Mechanism of delta oscillations in S1 .............................................. 170
5.4.2 M1 and S1 interactions ................................................................. 170
5.5 Final conclusions ............................................................................ 172

6. Dopamine augments an inward current in fast spiking interneurons in layer V of primary motor cortex .............................................................. 173

6.1 Introduction ......................................................................................... 174
6.1.1 Dopamine (DA) ............................................................................. 174
6.1.2 Interneurons (IN) .......................................................................... 174
6.1.3 DA and interneurons ...................................................................... 175
6.2 Results ............................................................................................... 176
6.2.1 GABAergic modulation of tonic and phasic currents in FS cells ...... 176
6.2.2 Dopaminergic modulation of currents in FS cells ........................... 181
6.2.3 In current modulation of I_Da in FS cells in LV of M1 ..................... 192
6.2.4 TRPC modulation of tonic and phasic currents in FS cells .............. 193
6.2.5 Effect of DA on holding current of pyramidal cells in LV of M1 ....... 198
6.3 Discussion

6.3.1 I_{tonic} and I_{phasic} in FS cells and pyramidal cells in LV of M1

6.3.2 DA induces an inward current (I_{DA}) possibly mediated by D2-like receptors

6.3.3 DA mediated inward current (I_{DA}) is independent on I_h in FS cells

6.3.4 I_{DA} was fully reversed by TRPC antagonists in FS cells

6.3.5 Final conclusions

7 General discussions, conclusions and future work

8 References
Table of figures

Figure 1.1 An illustration of field potentials at an excitatory and inhibitory at both synaptic and non-synaptic sites.................................................................22
Figure 1.2 Schematic representation of how ING and PING may look.................................24
Figure 1.3 Representative PAC...............................................................................27
Figure 1.4 Illustration of phase-amplitude coupling analysis with different modulation indices (cases 1-4).................................................................27
Figure 1.5 Elucidating the EEG recordings during various stages from awake to deep sleep stages and the associated oscillations during each stage.................................28
Figure 1.6 Intracellular mechanism of thalamic delta oscillations (adapted from McCormick and Pape 1990)..................................................................30
Figure 1.7 Somatotopic representation of the sensory and motor cortical representation of body regions.............................................................................32
Figure 1.8 Cortical and subcortical connections of M1 in rats and mice.............................34
Figure 1.9 Sensorimotor circuit representing reciprocal and long-range connections.........37
Figure 1.10 Representation of a typical GABAAR structure.............................................42
Figure 1.11 Representation of various signal transduction mechanism of action D1-like and D2-like receptors.................................................................49
Figure 2.1 Representation of various types of rat brain slice preparations used for extracellular and intracellular recordings.................................................54
Figure 2.2 An example Extracellular, Local field potential recording equipment................56
Figure 2.3 A representative patch clamp recording equipment.........................................58
Figure 3.1 Theta and gamma oscillations were induced both in M1 and S1 in the presence of KA and CCh.................................................................69
Figure 3.2 GABAA receptor block increases theta oscillatory power whilst decreasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1........................................72
Figure 3.3 AMPA receptor block increases theta oscillatory power whilst increasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1...........................................75
Figure 3.4 AMPA/KA receptor block increases theta oscillatory power whilst increasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.........................................78
Figure 3.5 NMDA receptor block has differential effects on theta oscillatory power whilst increasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.................................81
Figure 3.6 Dopamine increases both theta and gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.................................84
Figure 3.7 AMPH increases both theta and gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1 via DA release..........................................................................................87
Figure 3.8 Theta and gamma oscillations are phase delayed in M1 when compared to S1 in slice type A.................................................................................90
Figure 3.9 Phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1 in slice type A.................................................................91
Figure 3.10 No correlation exists between theta and gamma oscillations between M1 and S1 in slice type B.................................................................92
Figure 3.11 Local phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1 in slice type B.................................................................93
Figure 3.12 No correlation exists between theta and gamma oscillations in (M1) slice type C.........................................................................................94
Figure 3.13 Local phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations in M1 slice type C.........................................................................................94
Figure 3.14 No correlation exists between theta and gamma oscillations in (S1) slice type D ................................................................................................................................................................. 95
Figure 3.15 Local phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations in S1 slice type D ................................................................................................................................................................. 95
Figure 3.16 Bar chart representing modulation index (MI) in various slice types ................................................................................................................................. 96
Figure 4.1 Pharmacological induction and transition of delta oscillations (2-4 Hz) ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 114
Figure 4.2 Deep layers are the origin of delta oscillation in M1 ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 116
Figure 4.3 Muscarinic receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 117
Figure 4.4 Gap junction block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 118
Figure 4.5 GABA A receptor agonist shows concentration dependent differential effects on delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 119
Figure 4.6 GABA A receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 120
Figure 4.7 GABA B receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 121
Figure 4.8 Kainate receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 122
Figure 4.9 AMPA receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 123
Figure 4.10 NMDA receptor block has no effect on delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 124
Figure 4.11 Effect of group I, mGlu receptor modulators on delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 127
Figure 4.12 Effect of group II, mGlu receptor modulators on delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 128
Figure 4.13 Effect of group III, mGlu receptor modulators on delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 129
Figure 4.14 No significant change was noticed in frequency and power of delta oscillations in wash ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 130
Figure 4.15 Seizure like activity was induced in the presence of high KA with intact delta ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 131
Figure 4.16 Seizure like activity was induced in the presence of high CCh with delta intact ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 132
Figure 4.17 DA increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 133
Figure 4.18 HA increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 134
Figure 4.19 Awake drug mixture increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 135
Figure 4.20 Induction of delta oscillations in the presence of awake drug mixture ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 136
Figure 4.21 AMPH increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 137
Figure 4.22 Delta was not induced in the presence of AMPH ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 138
Figure 5.1 Pharmacological induction and transition of theta-gamma to delta oscillations (2-4 Hz) in LV of S1 ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 156
Figure 5.2 Representative typical delta oscillation in LV of S1 (2-4 Hz) ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 157
Figure 5.3 Muscarinic receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 158
Figure 5.4 GABA A receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 159
Figure 5.5 AMPA receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 160
Figure 5.6 NMDA receptor block has no effect on delta oscillatory power ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 161
Figure 5.7 Delta oscillations in S1 is significantly time delayed to that of delta in M1 in slice type A ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 163
Figure 5.8 LV of M1 is the place of origin of the delta frequency activity in slice type A ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 164
Figure 5.9 M1 drives the oscillatory activity at delta frequency in S1 in slice type B ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 165
Figure 5.10 LV of M1 is the place origin of delta oscillations in slice type C ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 166
Figure 5.11 No transition to delta oscillations was found in S1 slice without M1 in slice type D ................................................................................................................................................................................................. 167
Figure 5.12 LV of M1 is the origin of delta oscillations and drives the activity in S1 in slice type E ................................................................. 169

Figure 6.1 Bicuculline (Bic 20 µM) decreases tonic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 177

Figure 6.2 Bicuculline (Bic 20 µM) decreases phasic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 178

Figure 6.3 Picrotoxin (PTX 50 µM) decreases tonic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 179

Figure 6.4 Picrotoxin (PTX 50 µM) decreases phasic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 180

Figure 6.5 Dopamine (DA 30 µM) induces an inward current (IDA) in FS interneurons ................................................................. 181

Figure 6.6 Dopamine (DA 30 µM) has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 182

Figure 6.7 Bic decreased the holding current of IDA in FS cells ................................................................. 183

Figure 6.8 PTX reduced the holding current of IDA in FS cells ................................................................. 184

Figure 6.9 IDA was induced in FS interneurons in the presence of Bic ................................................................. 185

Figure 6.10 D1 agonist and antagonist does not affect holding current in FS interneurons ................................................................. 186

Figure 6.11 D1R agonist, SKF38390 has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 187

Figure 6.12 D1R antagonist, SCH23390 has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 188

Figure 6.13 Quinpirole increased the holding current whilst sulpiride decreased it in FS interneurons ................................................................. 189

Figure 6.14 D2R agonist, quinpirole has shown no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 190

Figure 6.15 D2R antagonist, sulpiride has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 191

Figure 6.16 IDA in FS interneurons was independent of Ih channels ................................................................. 192

Figure 6.17 Blockade of TRP channels by 2-ABP (100 µM) decrease holding current slightly beyond control ................................................................. 193

Figure 6.18 2-ABP has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 194

Figure 6.19 Blockade of TRP channels by SKF96365 (100 µM) decreases holding current slightly beyond baseline ................................................................. 195

Figure 6.20 TRPC channel antagonist, SKF96365 has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 196

Figure 6.21 SKF96365 and Bic decreases holding current much beyond the baseline in FS cells ................................................................. 197

Figure 6.22 DA has no effect on holding current in pyramidal neurons in LV of M1 ................................................................. 198
Table of tables

Table 1.1 Types of interneurons that M1 may contain and their properties......................... 39
Table 1.2 Role of iGluR subunits in various physiological and oscillatory activity
Adapted from Akgul and McBain et al., 2016................................................................. 48
Table 3.1 Pharmacology of theta and gamma oscillations in LV of M1 and S1............. 88
Table 3.2 Mean modulation index of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1
and the percentage of coupling in various slice types...................................................... 97
Table 4.1 Pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of M1........................................... 139
Table 4.2 Various delta reversal protocols..................................................................... 140
Table 5.1 Pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of S1 ........................................ 162
Abbreviations

µM  Micromolar
µs  Microsecond
µV  Microvolt
2-APB  2-Aminoethoxydiphenylborane
2-APV  D-(-)-2-Amino-5-phosphonopentanoic acid
5HT  Serotonin
AA  Ascorbic acid
AC  Adenyl cyclase
Ach  Acetylcholine
aCSF  Artificial cerebrospinal fluid
AD  Alzheimer disease
AHP  Afterhyperpolarisation
AMPAR  α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazolepropionic acid receptor
AMPH  Amphetamine sulphate
AP  Action potential
AT  Atropine
BG  Basal ganglia
BS  Brainstem nuclei
BZD  Benzodiazepine
CA1  Cornu ammonis-1 of hippocampus
Ca²⁺  Calcium ion
CA3  Cornu ammonis-3 of hippocampus
cAMP  Cyclic adenosine monophosphate
CB  Calbindin
CBNX  Carbenexolone
CCh  Carbachol
CFC  Cross-frequency coupling
CGP 55845  [(2S)-3-[(1S)-1-(3,4-Dichlorophenyl)ethyl]amino]-2-hydroxypropyl](phenylmethyl) phosphinic acid hydrochloride
CHPG  2-Chloro-5-hydroxyphenylglycine
ChR2  Channel rhodopsin 2
CL  Centrolateral nucleus of thalamus
Cl⁻  Chloride ion
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CNQX</td>
<td>6-Cyano-7-nitroquinoxaline-2,3-dione</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNS</td>
<td>Central nervous system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPCCOEt</td>
<td>7-(Hydroxyimino)cyclopropa[b]chromen-1a-carboxylate ethyl ester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPPG</td>
<td>(RS)-α-Cyclopropyl-4-phosphonophenylglycine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR</td>
<td>Calretinin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cre</td>
<td>Causes recombination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1R</td>
<td>D1-like dopamine receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2R</td>
<td>D2-like dopamine receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DA</td>
<td>Dopamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D-AP5</td>
<td>D-(-)-2-Amino-5-phosphonopentanoic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHPG</td>
<td>(S)-3,5-Dihydroxyphenylglycine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EEG</td>
<td>Electroencephalography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPSC</td>
<td>Excitatory postsynaptic current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EPSP</td>
<td>Excitatory postsynaptic potential</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fMRI</td>
<td>Functional magnetic resonance imaging</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>Fast-spiking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GABAR</td>
<td>γ-aminobutyric acid receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GAD 67</td>
<td>Glutamic acid decarboxylase 67 kDa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GBZ</td>
<td>Gabazine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GIRK</td>
<td>G protein-coupled inwardly-rectifying potassium channel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GPCR</td>
<td>G-protein-coupled receptor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GYKI 53655</td>
<td>1-(4-Aminophenyl)-3-methylcarbamyl-4-methyl-3,4-dihydro-7,8-methylenedioxy-5H-2,3-benzodiazepine hydrochloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HA</td>
<td>Histamine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCN</td>
<td>Hyperpolarisation-activated cyclic nucleotide–gated channels</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCO₃⁻</td>
<td>Bicarbonate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hr</td>
<td>Hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hz</td>
<td>Hertz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IB</td>
<td>Intrinsic bursting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFSECN</td>
<td>International Federation of Societies for EEG and Clinical Neurophysiology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iₜₜ</td>
<td>Hyperpolarisation activated cation current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IₜₜCa</td>
<td>Ca²⁺ dependent hyperpolarising K⁺ current</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>Interneuron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ING</td>
<td>Interneuronal network gamma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPSC</td>
<td>Inhibitory postsynaptic current</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IPSP  Inhibitory postsynaptic potential
I_T   Low-threshold calcium current
iGluR Ionotropic glutamate receptor
K+    Potassium ion
KA    Kainic acid/kainate
KAR   Kainic acid receptor
KCC2  Potassium chloride co-transporter
KO    Knock-out
L I    Layer 1
L II   Layer 2
L III  Layer 3
L IV   Layer 4
L V    Layer 5
L VI   Layer 6
LFP   Local field potentials
LTD   Long term depression
LTP   Long term potentiation
LTS   Low threshold spiking
LY 341495 (2S)-2-Amino-2-[(1S,2S)-2-carboxycycloprop-1-yl]-3-(xanth-9-yl) propanoic
      acid
LY 379268 (1R,4R,5S,6R)-4-Amino-2-oxabicyclo [3.1.0] hexane-4,6-dicarboxylic acid
M1    Primary motor cortex
M2    Secondary motor cortex
mAchR Muscarinic acetylcholine receptor
MEG   Magnetoencephalography
mGluR Metabotropic glutamate receptor
MSNs  Medium spiny neurons (MSNs)
MI    Modulation Index
min   Minute
MK-801 (5S,10R)-(−)-5-Methyl-10,11-dihydro-5H-dibenzo[a,d)cyclohepten-5,10-imine maleate
mM   Millimolar
MPEP  2-Methyl-6-(phenylethynyl) pyridine
Ms    Millisecond
MSNs  Medium spiny neurons
MTEP  3-((2-Methyl-1,3-thiazol-4-yl) ethynyl)pyridine hydrochloride
mV  Millivolt
NA  Noradrenaline
Na⁺  Sodium ion
NE  Norepinephrine
NKCC  Sodium and potassium coupled co-transporter
NMDAR  N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor
NREM  Non-rapid eye movement
OLM  Oriens lacunosum moleculare
PAC  Phase-amplitude coupling
PDPC  Phase-dependent power correlations
PD  Parkinson’s disease
PET  Positron emission tomography
PFC  Prefrontal cortex
PI  Phosphoinositole/phosphoinositide
PING  Pyramidal-interneuron network gamma
PIR  Pirenzepine
PLC  Phospholipase C
PO  Posterior thalamic nucleus
PPC  Phase-phase coupling
PPN  Pedunculopontine nucleus
PTX  Picrotoxin
PV+  Parvalbumin positive interneurons
r  Radius
REM  Rapid eye movement
RMP  Resting membrane potential
RS  Regular Spiking
RSNP  Regular spiking non-pyramidal cell
RT/RTN  Reticular nucleus of thalamus
s  Second
S1  Primary sensory cortex
S2/Par2  Secondary somatosensory/parietal area
SC  Superior colliculus
SCH 23390  (R)-(+)·7-Chloro-8-hydroxy-3-methyl-1-phenyl-2,3,4,5-tetrahydro-1H-3-benzazepine hydrochloride
SKF96365  1-[2-(4-Methoxyphenyl)-2-[3-(4-methoxyphenyl) propoxy]ethyl-1H-imidazole
SO  Somatostatin
SWO  Slow wave oscillations
SYM2206  (-)-4-(4-Aminophenyl)-1,2-dihydro-1-methyl-2-propylcarbamoyl-6,7-methylenedioxophthalazine
TLE  Temporal lobe epilepsy
TRPC  Transient receptor potential cation channels
UBP 304  (S)-1-(2-Amino-2-carboxyethyl)-3-(2-carboxythiophen-3-ylmethyl)pyrimidine 2,4-dione
UBP 310  (S)-1-(2-Amino-2-carboxyethyl)-3-(2-carboxy-thiophene-3-yl-methyl)-5-methylpyrimidine-2,4-dione
V_e  Electrical potential
VIP  Vasoactive intestinal polypeptide
VL  Ventrolateral nucleus of thalamus
ZI  Zona inserta
ZOL  Zolpidem
A  Alpha
β  Beta
γ  Gamma
θ  Theta
δ  Delta
π  Pi
ρ  Rho
Τ  Tau
1 Introduction
1.1 Brain rhythms

Brain rhythms are voltage fluctuations of electrical activity of neuronal assemblies and are shaped by geometry and alignment of those assemblies (Buzsaki, 2006). Hans Berger first recorded rhythmic electric signal in humans in 1929 using the electroencephalograph (EEG) device. The reliable nature of the EEG device attracted both clinicians and scientists, which lead to research into brain rhythms, their mechanisms, origin, and roles in health and disease. Nowadays, neuronal voltage changes can be measured by EEG or indirectly via magnetoencephalography (MEG) on the scalp and intracranially with subdural electrodes (electrocorticography) in vivo. Extracellular local field potential recordings (LFPs; mechanisms detailed below) can also detect these rhythms and this approach is widely used in vitro alongside single-cell electrophysiology techniques. Brain rhythms are categorized depending on frequency band (number of cycles per second, units: Hertz (Hz)). Different types of rhythms include: very slow oscillations (<1 Hz), delta (2-4 Hz), theta (4-11 Hz), alpha (8-13 Hz), mu (7-10 Hz) beta (13-30 Hz), gamma (30-100 Hz) and very fast oscillations (>100 Hz) (Steriade et al., 1993; Curio et al., 1994). In LFP experiments, activity at different frequency band is measured by their relative power (amplitude of the power spectrum). It is evident that brain rhythms are associated with specific brain functional activity. For example, research suggests roles in physiological functions such as sleep & wakefulness (delta rhythm), memory formation (theta and gamma rhythms) and consolidation (delta), cognitive processing and integration (gamma activity; Thallon and Bertrand, 1999; Singer, 1999) and in diseases such as Parkinson`s disease, schizophrenia, epilepsy, and Alzheimer`s disease (Brown et al., 2001; Herrmann and Demiralp, 2005).

1.1.1 Neuronal contribution to the LFP

Local field potential recording (electric potential $V_e$) is generated by the summation of currents flowing in and out (sink and source respectively) of neuronal elements (synapses, dendrites and somata) and across the extent of extracellular recording site. The amplitude and frequency of LFP activity depends upon contributions from these various current sources as well as properties of the brain tissue. Amplitude is inversely proportional to the distance ($r$) between recording site and source. Hence, larger the distance between the source and recording site the less information obtained from LFP (see review Buzsaki et al., 2012). The most important contributor to LFP is synaptic activity. The overlapping activity of several similar compartments induces a measurable signal, which is made possible by kinetically slow events like synaptic currents (Elul 1971; Logothetis, 2004 Niedermayer et al., 2005). Hence, the tree-like structure of neurons formed by soma and dendrites with electrically excitable properties affected by several thousand synapses provides the basis of LFP signals.
Synaptic NMDA and AMPA receptors mediate excitatory events by enabling the flow of calcium and sodium ions respectively. Influx of these cations (Ca\(^{2+}\) and Na\(^+\)) to intracellular space from extracellular space creates an extracellular current sink. To achieve electrical balance, this sink is balanced by a source. Passive current flows along the neurons as an opposing ion flow from intracellular to extracellular space which, together with the original sink, forms a dipole. Synaptic GABA\(_A\) receptors mediate inhibitory currents involving the flow of Cl\(^-\) which creates an active source in the extracellular space and need an intracellular sink to achieve electrical balance. However, it is difficult to determine if the identified source or sink is active or passive unless the type of synapse is known (Buzsaki et al., 2003, 2006, 2012). Since the chloride ion equilibrium potential is near to resting membrane potential, inhibitory events are assumed to contribute very little to the LFP (Bartos et al., 2007; Koch 1999). However, inhibitory currents can induce transmembrane hyperpolarising currents in fast spiking neurons (when the membrane gets depolarised) and are known to contribute to LFP in generating fast oscillations in hippocampus (Trevelyan et al., 2009; Glickfeld et al., 2009; Oren et al., 2010; Bazelot et al., 2010). Pyramidal neurons also generate strong dipoles owing to the separation distance between active sink or source and the return current, and have been suggested to contribute greatly to the LFP (Buzsaki et al., 2012). Nevertheless, interneurons are significant contributors to LFP where the contribution from pyramidal neurons is paced and controlled via inhibitory interneurons, di-synaptically. This was reported in invasive studies in cortex of human and monkey (Telenczuk et al., 2017) and is consistent with data from hippocampal slices (Bazelot, 2010). Spike waveform features such as shape of the spike has enabled the classification of inhibitory (narrow spikes) and excitatory (broad spikes) neurons (Peyrache et al., 2012) but exceptions do exist such that non-fast spiking interneurons display a broad waveform spike (Fuentealba et al., 2008) whilst some excitatory neurons in motor cortex display narrow spikes (Vigneswaran et al., 2011). Intracellular and extracellular recordings at synaptic sites of excitatory (e.g. NMDAR) and inhibitory (GABA\(_A\)R) receptors are illustrated in figure 1.1.
Figure 1.1 An illustration of field potentials at an excitatory and inhibitory at both synaptic and non-synaptic sites.

Intracellular and extracellular recordings shows a rapid EPSP/IPSP at a synaptic site on dendrite but a slower and smaller EPSP/IPSP at soma. (A) Source (positive) flows outward and inward (negative) sink at synaptic site whilst the opposite is true for inhibitory synapse (B) Note the source at synaptic site and sink at soma.

Source: http://clinicalgate.com/electroencephalography/.

Strong currents that are generated across extracellular space are fast action potentials that are detected as spikes or ‘units’ (e.g. Koch, 1999). Despite the high amplitude $V_s$ generating ability of Na$^+$ spikes, they were thought not to contribute greatly to LFP or EEG (Niedermeyer et al., 2005; Nunez et al., 2006) due to their short duration (<2 ms). However, synchronous firing from many neurons (population) is known to play a role in high frequency activity (Buzsaki et al., 2012) suggesting a role of action potentials in LFP (Pettersen et al., 2008).

Voltage dependent Ca$^{2+}$ spikes are often triggered by a back-propagating action potential to distal dendrites (lakram et al., 2009) or because of excitatory post synaptic potentials (EPSPs) mediated by NMDA receptors (Hirsch et al., 1995; Schiller et al., 2000; Polsky et al., 2004; Larkum et al., 2009). Due to their long-lasting nature (10-100 ms) and large power (10-50 mV) dendritic Ca$^{2+}$ spikes are considered to play a role in the LFP (Wong et al., 1979; Llinas et al., 1988; Schiller et al., 2000; Stuart et al., 2008). Other non-synaptic contributors include voltage dependent intrinsic currents ($I_h$ and $I_T$) in resonance (neuronal ability to respond to a frequency band) (Llinas, 1998) and gap junctional potentials.
1.2 Gamma oscillations

Gamma oscillations were first designated as beta-like waves (35-45 Hz) (Jasper and Andrews, 1938). Later, they began to be referred to as 40 Hz oscillation (Das and Gastaut, 1955). Then, in the late 19th century, gamma rhythms were named based on the frequency range (30-70 Hz) of oscillations (Bressler and Freeman, 1980) and they have since become the most commonly studied type of oscillation in various regions of brain. Many studies have been carried out in hippocampus (in vitro and in vivo) due to its clear laminar organization and densely packed pyramidal neurons that give rise to high amplitude gamma oscillations spontaneously in vitro (Modebadze, 2014, Shah, 2016).

1.2.1 Mechanistic aspects of gamma oscillatory activity

In vivo studies have reported that there are two rhythm-generating structures in hippocampus: dentate gyrus and CA3 (Csicsvari et al., 2003). In vitro pharmacological induction methods of gamma oscillations have been demonstrated using approaches such as hypertonic potassium solution and tetanic stimulation but the most commonly used method is the bath application of cholinergic agonist, carbachol (CCh) and/or kainate receptor agonist, kainic acid (KA) or metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist (CHPG) (Whittington et al., 1995; Fisahn et al., 1998; Fisahn et al., 2004; Hajos and Paulsen, 2009). Gamma oscillations have been reported in various regions: in hippocampus (CA3 and CA1) (Buzsaki et al., 1983; Whittington 1995; ; Bragin et al., 1995; Fisahn et al., 1998 ;Gillies et al., 2002; Mann et al., 2005), somatosensory cortex (Buhl et al., 1998) striatum (Berke et al., 2004; Tort et al., 2008) entorhinal cortex (Cunningham et al., 2003), amygdala (Sinfield and Collins, 2006), cerebral cortex (Middleton et al., 2008), olfactory bulb (Adrian, 1942, Freeman, 1975) and primary motor cortex (Johnson et al., 2017). However, the time required to induce activity and concentrations of KA and CCh varies with the region and slice preparation. ING (interneurons network gamma) (Whittington, 1995; Traub et al., 1996a) and PING (pyramidal-interneuron network gamma) are the two models proposed as mechanisms of gamma oscillations in vitro as illustrated in figure below (Whittington et al., 2010) both depending on interneuron populations in cortex. (McCormick, 1996; Wang, 1993; Wang 1999; Minlebaev et al., 2011).
1.2.2 ING

Interneuronal gamma (ING) arises from a neuronal population consisting of only inhibitory interneurons in which the important factors include: mutually connected interneurons, a time constant mediated by GABA$_{A}$R, driving current to initiate interneuron spiking in the absence of fast phasic excitatory drive (Wang & Rinzel 1992; Whittington et al., 1995; Wang & Buzsáki 1996; Traub et al., 1996b). During ING (figure 1.2), one population (group 1) of interneurons fire action potentials (AP), generating IPSC in another connected population of interneurons (group 2). When the required net excitation of interneurons is available then group 2 generates rebound spikes with IPSCs in group 1 and the cycle repeats. This recurrent chain of events suggest inhibition to be essential for synchronisation (Van Vreeswijk et al., 1994). Oscillatory frequency is strongly determined by the IPSC decay time kinetics (Wang and Buzsaki, 1996; Tiesinga and Jose, 2000; Buzsaki and Wang, 2012). Hence, a GABA$_{A}$R modulator, pentobarbital, decreases the frequency of oscillations via increased IPSC decay time, confirming the critical role of IPSC kinetics in determining the frequency (Segal and Baker, 1984; Fishan et al., 2004). Nevertheless, there is no clear understanding of where the source of excitation in ING model.

1.2.3 PING

Pyramidal-Interneuronal gamma (PING) is a mechanism of gamma oscillations based on reciprocal interactions between populations of pyramidal and inhibitory neurons (Wilson and Cowan, 1972; Freeman, 1975; Leung, 1982; Ermentrout & Kopell, 1998; Borgers and Kopell, 2003; Brunel & Wang, 2003; Geisler et al., 2005). These oscillations rely upon phasic excitation and inhibition to synchronise (Roopun et al., 2009; Fisahn et al., 1998). These oscillations have been suggested to be more persistent than ING like oscillations due to their alternative fast excitation and delayed inhibition that occurs in a cyclic manner (Buzsaki and Wang, 2012). Like ING model, enhancing IPSC kinetics using pentobarbital reduced the frequency and oscillations were abolished upon addition of GABA$_{A}$R antagonist. Hence, GABA$_{A}$R mediated IPSC decay time determines the frequency of the oscillations (Freeman, 1975, Leung, 1982) which is now known to be a characteristic feature of PING both in vivo and in vitro (Mann et al., 2005; Hájos and Paulsen, 2009; Bragin et al.,
1995; Csicsvari et al., 2003; Hasenstaub et al., 2005; Tiesinga and Sejnowski, 2009). Unlike ING model, PING like oscillations were found to be dependent on AMPAR due to the reliance on excitatory drive (Cunningham et al., 2003). Interestingly, pharmacological manipulation of IPSC kinetics has shown to have comparatively more impact on frequency of ING, suggesting the stability of the network was enhanced upon the recruitment of pyramidal cells in PING (Whittington et al., 2000).

1.2.4 Evidence for ING and PING in vivo and in vitro

In vitro ING-like mechanism was first observed in CA1 in the presence of the metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist, DHPG or high potassium solution plus blockade of ionotropic glutamate receptors (Whittington et al., 1995; Traub, 1996; LeBeau et al., 2002; Whittington et al., 2010) and also by bath application of KA (Fisahn et al., 2004). Cholinergically induced PING like mechanisms have also been identified in hippocampal and cortical slices (Fisahn et al., 1998) and KA and CCh also induced the same (Whittington, 2010; Modebadze, 2014; Nicholas, 2016). Further studies (Fuchs et al., 2007) have shown that the amplitude of gamma oscillations was decreased when AMPAR expression was genetically knocked down, presumably due to disturbed interaction between pyramidal and interneuron cells. Depolarising cortical interneurons by optogenetically exciting ChR2 channels in vivo has shown an increase in gamma amplitude when recording extracellularly whilst a decrease in gamma power was observed by hyperpolarising interneurons via halorhodopsin (Sohal et al., 2009). It was also reported that when random light pulses were used to drive interneurons in vivo, power in the gamma frequency range was enhanced in comparison to other frequency bands (Cardin et al., 2009). However, many studies suggest ING to be an artefact since the source of excitation is unknown which needs further exploration.

1.3 Theta oscillations

Theta rhythm with a frequency range of 4-10 Hz has been the subject of many investigations in the rodent hippocampus (Bland, 1986; Bland et al., 2002; Cunningham et al., 2003; Jacobs, 2010; Jacobs, 2014). Previous studies have defined hippocampal 1-4 Hz as delta (Clemens et al., 2013), as theta (Fell et al., 2003) and also theta/delta (Mormann et al., 2008) and discrepancies still exist. Despite these issues relating to frequency banding, hippocampal 1-4 Hz and 4-8 Hz oscillations found in human and rodents respectively have been reported to have functional similarities in that they exhibit an activation during navigation and memory tasks and show analogous coupling pattern with gamma oscillations (Ekstrom et al., 2005; Jacobs, 2014).

Hippocampal theta in rodents can be divided into two types: atropine sensitive theta (4-9 Hz) which is associated with automatic movement and atropine insensitive theta (6-12 Hz)
which is found during voluntary movements (Vanderwolf, 1969; Kramis et al., 1975). Since Local field potential is the summation of EPSPs and IPSPs on the soma and dendrites of pyramidal cells it is assumed that theta activity is the interplay between two different dipoles (current generators). One being the excitatory input received by pyramidal cells and the other being inhibitory input from GABAergic neurons (Buzsaki, 2002). The role of theta oscillations in spatial memory was demonstrated by behavioural studies in which specific pattern at theta frequency corresponds to firing of place cells corresponding to visual cues (O’Keefe, 1976) and the phase relationship between spiking and theta activity of place cells was identified to shift depending on the location (O’Keefe and Reece, 1993), suggesting that location was encoded by phase precession.

1.4 Phase-amplitude coupling (PAC)

Studies have demonstrated that certain brain functions such as cognition are achieved by simultaneous activity in multiple frequency bands (Schutter and Knyazev, 2012). It is evident that each frequency band plays a specific role in functional aspects like perception and cognition (Cohen, 2008) but further insight may be provided by uncovering the relation and interaction between different frequency band oscillations (Jensen and Colgin, 2007). Such interaction is termed cross-frequency coupling (CFC) which has received greater interest in recent years in the field of neuroscience. CFC has been identified in signals obtained from LFP, electroencephalogram, electrocortigram recordings (Bragin et al., 1995; Lakatos et al., 2005; Canolty et al., 2006; Demiralp et al., 2007; Jensen and Colgin, 2007; Cohen, 2008; Kramer et al., 2008; Young and Eggermont 2009).

CFC was categorised in two forms: phase-amplitude coupling (PAC) and phase-phase coupling (PPC). The former is the type of CFC investigated in this thesis. PAC is also known as nested oscillations in which the phase of low frequency oscillations (example: theta) determines the power or amplitude of high frequency oscillations (example: gamma). Thus, amplitude of high frequency oscillation (nested) is synchronised with the phase of low frequency oscillation (nesting) (Palva et al., 2005). This type of CFC enables observation of the inter-frequency relationship aspects that correspond to low frequency and the amplitude of higher frequency components of local cortical circuit (Canolty and Knight, 2010). Behavioural studies have suggested that PAC is involved in sensory integration, attentiveness and memory organisation (Lisman and Idiart, 1995; Lisman, 2005; Schroeder and Lakatos, 2009; Voytek et al., 2010). Several brain regions have been reported to show PAC, including hippocampus (Bragin et al., 1995), neocortex (Canolty et al., 2006) and basal ganglia (Cohen et al., 2008) and PAC is evident in rodents (Bragin et al., 1995; Tort et al., 2008), sheep (Nicol et al., 2009) and monkeys (Lakatos et al., 2005) as well as in
humans (Cohen et al., 2008), Schematic representation is shown in figure 1.3. Note from the figure that the amplitude of fast oscillations is always greatest at a certain phase of low frequency oscillation, this is called the coupling phase.

**Figure 1.3 Representative PAC**

Top trace is the sum of both (fast and slow) oscillations in which the amplitude of fast oscillations corresponds to the phase of slow oscillation.

**Figure 1.4 Illustration of phase-amplitude coupling analysis with different modulation indices (cases 1-4).**

(A) Left traces are the example summation of fast and slow oscillations (top traces) and filtered data of coupling strength (bottom traces), right traces are the corresponding phase-amplitude analysis graphs (B) bar graph of corresponding modulation index of all cases (1-4). Note greater the coupling strength greater the modulation index. Obtained from Tort et al., 2010 for illustration purposes.

Several methods of measuring PAC have been reported (Canolty et al., 2006; Tort et al., 2010) but each of them have advantages and disadvantages. The figure 1.4 illustrates phase amplitude coupling analysis and corresponding modulation index of theta and gamma taken as an example. In this thesis, the method and Matlab scripts provided by Tort et al., 2010 were used for PAC analysis (see results chapter 3).
1.5 Oscillatory patterns during sleep

Various sleep stages were first described by Loomis et al., (1937) who demonstrated the spectrum of EEG from wakefulness to deep sleep. In the 1950, REM (Rapid Eye Movement) stage was distinguished and sleep stages were reclassified as NREM (Non-Rapid Eye Movement) and REM stage (Dement and Kleitmen, 1957). Various rhythmic patterns were described in thalamocortical systems during sleep stages, including infra-slow: 0.02-0.1 Hz, slow (0.2-1 Hz), delta (1-4 Hz), spindle (12-14 Hz) theta (3-7 Hz), and fast: 20-60 Hz and ultra-fast: 100-600 Hz (Bazhenov and Timofeev, 2006).

Figure 1.5 Elucidating the EEG recordings during various stages from awake to deep sleep stages and the associated oscillations during each stage.

Low amplitude but high frequency oscillations were identified in wakeful stages and REM stages whereas, high amplitude low frequency oscillations were characterized in deep sleep stages. Source: Hockenbury and Hockenbury 2010.

Five stages of sleep cycle were characterized in humans. The first four stages are grouped as (NREM) sleep stage with last deepest one (stage 4) is punctuated by episodes of REM (Rechtschaffen and Kales, 1968) as illustrated in figure 1.5.

The sleep cycle is known to progress in following order, N1-N2-N3-N4-REM (Feinberg and Floyd, 1979). Stage 1 is a transitional stage between sleep and waking and is associated with low voltage EEG with mixed frequencies at alpha (4-7 Hz) and theta (7-10 Hz) band. Alpha oscillations are often seen in this relaxed state (Carskadon and Dement, 2011) and this stage lasts about 1-7 minutes, constituting about 2% of the sleep cycle. Stage 2 comprises sleep spindles (10-17 Hz), K+ complexes, typically constitutes about 45-55% in adults (even more in young adults) of sleep cycle and lasts about 20-30 minutes. Stage 3 consists of a mixture of theta and delta waves of frequency 0.1-1 and 1-4 Hz. Stage 3 occurs
longer periods during initial sleep cycles. This stage is characterized by the lowest breathing rate and blood pressure with increased dreaming (Carskadon and Dement, 2011) and delta activity. Stage 4 is defined by high amplitude delta oscillations (2-4 Hz). Stage 3 and 4 are often described as slow-wave or delta sleep stage and represents 15-20% of sleep cycle. EEG recordings revealed that these stages are characterised by ‘up’ and ‘down’ states of cortex in which neurons in cortex are depolarised in ‘up’ state and may fire action potentials whilst ‘down’ state is when the cells are hyperpolarised and do not fire (Steriade et al., 1991, 1993a, 1993b, 2001; Contreras and Steriade, 1995; Werth et al., 1996; Timofeev et al., 2000a, 2000b, 2001; Molle et al., 2002; Clemens et al., 2007). Stage 5 (REM stage), which lasts for 5-15 minutes is an indication of end of NREM stages and is characterized with rapid eye movements, loss of muscle tone and dreaming. It is thought that sleep stages always begin with NREM stages (lasts about 50-70 minutes) followed with REM (5-25 minutes) stage in a cyclic manner for about four times every night (Rechtschaffen and Kales, 1968; Amzica and Steriade 1998; Carskadon and Dement, 2011). REM sleep was found to be dominant during later cycles of sleep whilst N3 and 4 are dominant in earlier cycles (Aeschbach and Borbely, 1993).

1.6 Delta oscillations and sleep

The delta rhythm was first described by Walter in 1936 as a specific slow wave recorded during an EEG investigation of pathological tumours. The frequency range for delta wave activity is between 0 and 4 Hz as implicated in International Federation of Societies for Electroencephalography and Clinical Neurophysiology (IFSECN) (1974). However, frequency ranges such as 1-4 Hz (Ursin, 1968), 0.5-4 Hz (Frost and Kellaway et al., 1966), 0.5-5 Hz (Gibbs and Gibbs, 1951) and 0.1-3.5 Hz (Niedermeyer 1999) are often mentioned in the literature. A wide range of research has been carried out to disclose the relation between the EEG and cellular mechanisms (Creutzfeldt et al., 1966; Frost and Kellaway et al., 1966; Rappelsberger et al., 1982). There is more than one phenomenon in the frequency range of 0-4 Hz which includes slow oscillations (<1 Hz) and delta (1-4 Hz) oscillations. Several studies are available demonstrating the origins of slow-wave oscillations (<1 Hz) in thalamus (Crunelli and Hughes, 2010) neocortex (Compte et al., 2003; Shu et al., 2003; Hasenstaub et al., 2005; Haider et al., 2006), in cortex (Sanchez-Vives and McCormick, 2000) yet very little is known about delta oscillations in terms of origin and mechanism underlying the rhythm at 2-4 Hz, though it is assumed that there are at least two types such as thalamic and cortical delta oscillations, depending on the source of origin.
1.6.1 Thalamic delta oscillations

Thalamic delta oscillations were characterized in vivo in motor, sensory, association and intralaminar thalamic nuclei of cats (Steriade et al., 1991b; Dossi et al., 1992) and in vitro in neurons of the rodent lateral geniculate (LG) (McCormick and Pape, 1990; Leresche et al., 1990). The rhythmicity in these oscillations is generated intrinsically as a result of interplay between two inward currents of thalamic relay neurons: low-threshold Ca$^{2+}$ current ($I_T$) and hyperpolarisation activated cation (Na$^+$ and K$^+$) current ($I_h$). Long-lasting hyperpolarisation, below -65 mV in a neuron of thalamus activates slow $I_h$, which causes depolarisation of membrane potential which activates $I_T$, generating a Ca$^{2+}$ spike which in turn triggers a burst of high frequency Na$^{2+}$ action potentials. $I_h$ is deactivated and $I_T$ is inactivated during the burst of spikes and burst termination is followed by hyperpolarising overshoot mediated by a Ca$^{2+}$-dependent afterhyperpolarising K$^+$ current ($I_{K_{Ca}}$). During bursts, both $I_h$ and $I_T$ are deactivated and inactivated because of voltage dependency and transient nature respectively. The post-burst after hyperpolarisation (AHP) activates $I_h$ and starts the next cycle of oscillations (McCormick and Pape, 1990). This mechanism is illustrated in figure 1.6.

![Illustration removed for copyright restrictions](image)

**Figure 1.6 Intracellular mechanism of thalamic delta oscillations (adapted from McCormick and Pape 1990).**

$I_h$ is sensitive to both voltage and Ca$^{2+}$ concentration, the fluctuations in Ca$^{2+}$ concentration can alter the strength of $I_h$. This converts delta activity into a waxing/waning pattern which is like that of thalamocortical neurons in intact cat (Dossi et al., 1992) and changes to clock-like after neocortex removal (Timofeev et al., 2000). Moreover, similar activity of rebound bursts at delta range was also noticed in thalamic slice preparations (McCormick and Pape,
1990; Lerescue et al., 1990; Soltesz et al., 1991) and in single neurons of computer models (Toth and Crunelli, 1992; Destexhe et al., 1993; Wang, 1994).

1.6.2 Cortical delta oscillations

Early studies reported delta oscillations in isolated cortex of cats (Frost and Kellaway et al., 1966) and of neocortical origin after thalamectomy (Villablanca and Salinas-Zeballos, 1972; Villablanca, 1974). In addition, Ball et al., demonstrated that the delta oscillations emerge in between II/III and V layers of cortex (Ball et al., 1977). Cortical delta is far less well understood than thalamic delta. Some studies suggest that thalamic delta is independent of cortical delta rhythm as it existed after decortication (Steriade et al., 1985; Pare et al., 1987). On the other hand, delta oscillations were desynchronised after decortication proving that the thalamic delta is synchronised by long-range cortical connections (Timofeev and Steriade, 1996). These controversial reports suggest the need for further investigation of cortical delta rhythm. Nevertheless, a recent study in slices containing secondary somatosensory/parietal area S2/Par2 has enabled pharmacological induction of delta oscillations first time in vitro by maintaining a neuro-modulatory state equivalent to that of sleep (Carracedo et al., 2013).

1.7 Primary motor cortex (M1)

The primary motor cortex (M1) contributes greatly to the execution of voluntary movements and motor learning (Rioul-Pedotti et al., 1998). In early studies, Penfield and Boldrey used low intensity micro-stimulation of M1 in human surgical patients to show its organization in a somatotopic manner of leg, arm, head and face, which was termed the “Motor Homunculus” (Penfield and Boldrey, 1937). The homunculus elucidates a somatotopic M1 map with each area and corresponding body parts (see figure 1.7). In 1968 Stoney et al., (1968) followed up the studies in M1 using the intra-cortical electrical stimulation method. This technique enabled various researches to investigate and prove the topographic organization in M1, where the microelectrode was inserted into M1 and moved in small steps across the area (Asanuma and Ward, 1971; Kwan et al., 1978; Donoghue et al., 1992). However, areas associated with body parts showed overlap and were also widely spread and/or were present in multiple representations (Nudo et al., 1992; Sane and Donoghue, 2000). This functional overlapping was further established by various imaging techniques (positron emission tomography (PET) and functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI)) (Colebatch et al., 1991) and, hence, the homunculus is perhaps too simple a representation of motor somatotopy. Pyramidal cells form 70% of the neuronal population in M1 (Sloper et al., 1979). Moreover, a greater diversity in size of pyramidal cell is observed in M1 than in any other cortical area. For instance, there is a fourfold range of pyramidal cell body area in precentral gyrus compared to a tenfold range of pyramidal cell body area.
in M1 (Jones and Wise, 1977). M1 is oriented in vertical columnar pattern which comprises of five horizontal layers: superficial (I,II&III) and deep (V,VI) layers.

1.7.1 Layer I

Layer I (LⅠ) is termed as the plexiform layer, and is known to be devoid of excitatory pyramidal neurons (Chu et al., 2003). Hence, it is mostly comprised of inhibitory interneurons (Gabbott and Somogyi, 1986) which provide inhibitory input to pyramidal cells in other layers (Chu et al., 2003). Douglas and Martin identified two structurally different interneurons such as Retzius-Ccajal neurons and small neurons in LⅠ. This layer possesses axons from LⅡ-VⅠ and receives inputs from other cortical areas and thalamus (Douglas and Martin, 2004).

1.7.2 Layer II/III

Layer Ⅱ (LⅡ) and Layer III (LⅢ) are termed as external granular layer and external pyramidal layer respectively. Both pyramidal and non-pyramidal cells were characterised in LⅡ/III. Pyramidal cells receive inputs from S1 and send axon collaterals either to LV or are confined to LⅡ/III. Non-pyramidal cells do not possess apical dendrites and are categorised into fast spiking (FS), late spiking (LS), low threshold spiking (LTS), and regular spiking non-pyramidal cells (RSNP) (Kawaguchi, 1995) in these layers. Douglas and Martin reported that cells LⅡ/III have dense thalamic axonal inputs and bear receptors for various neuromodulators including 5-HT, dopamine, and noradrenaline (Douglas and Martin, 2004).
1.7.3 Layer IV

M1 has always been considered to be agranular (Brodmann, 1909; Shipp, 2005; Bastos et al., 2012; Shipp et al., 2013) due to the apparent absence of an anatomically definable LIV (Donoghue and Wise, 1982; Beaulieu, 1993; Zilles et al., 1995) which makes it unique compared to other cortical regions. However, several recent studies (Krieg, 1946; von Bonin, 1949; Caviness, 1975; Deschênes et al., 1979; Skoglund et al., 1997; Cho et al., 2004, Kuramoto et al., 2009; Rowell et al., 2010; Mao et al., 2011; Kaneko, 2013; García-Cabezas and Barbas, 2014; Yamawaki et al., 2014) suggest the existence of connectivity patterns that are like those of LIV in other sensory regions, despite the lack of cyto-architectural visibility of this layer. The cells present in a thin area between LIII and LVA in mouse have been identified to have synaptic connections like LIV which includes: excitatory projections from thalamus, long range corticocortical projections and excitatory projections to LII/III (Yamawaki et al., 2014). Interestingly, LIV of M1 does not contain stellate cells that were present in sensory regions but instead have pyramidal type neurons across a thin laminar zone (Yamawaki et al., 2014; Barbas et al., 2015).

1.7.4 Layer V

Layer V (LV) is called the internal pyramidal layer and is characterised by the presence of large, special cells called Betz cells (Betz, 1894) which is the unique feature of LV in M1 (but like the large Meynert cells of deep primary visual cortex (V1)). Betz cells occupy a large volume in deep layers of M1 and have giant cell bodies (Meyer 1987) and make up 12% of the pyramidal cell assemblies (Rivara et al., 2003). Also, these cells are heterogeneous in structure and therefore exist not just pyramidal form but also triangular and spindle like forms (Braak, 1976). The smaller pyramidal cells are known to possess prominent apical dendrites which project to the pial surface and have terminations in superficial layers of M1 (Cho et al., 2004) whilst the axons from these cells projects to spinal cord. Those large cells in LVA project their axons to basal ganglia (BG) (Lei et al., 2004) and their apical dendrites receive input from LII/III (Kaneka et al., 2000).

1.7.5 Layer VI

Layer VI is called the fusiform layer. It has been demonstrated that many of pyramidal cells in this layer have their inputs from, and projections to thalamus (Kaneka et al., 2000). Colossal interneurons form a source of input to pyramidal and non-pyramidal cells in this layer (Karayannis et al., 2007). Parvalbumin (PV) positive interneurons are also prominently identified in this layer.
1.8 Cortico-cortical and sub-cortical connections

Major cortico-cortical connections (as represented in figure 1.8) in rats are granular S1 (transfers contralateral and ipsilateral sensorimotor signal), S2-PV region somatosensory cortex (dysgranular) of both same and contralateral cerebral hemisphere (White and DeAmicis, 1977; Porter and White, 1983; Welker et al., 1988) contralateral M1 had callosal connections. Sub-cortical reciprocal connections (as indicated in Fig 3B) are found with motor thalamus (Ventral lateral thalamus), reticular thalamic nucleus, central lateral nucleus (cerebello-thalamic pathway) and Zona inserta (regulatory inputs in and out M1) (Donoghue and Parhan, 1983; Koralek et al., 1990; Reep et al., 1990; Fabri and Burton, 1991; Rouiller et al., 1993; Izraeli and Porter, 1995; Hoffer et al., 2013).

Figure 1.8 Cortical and subcortical connections of M1 in rats and mice


1.9 Intrinsic laminar organisation of M1 in rats

It is thought that the major ascending pathway is LVa to LII/III and the dominant descending pathway is from LII/III to LVa (Weiler et al., 2008). It is assumed corticocortical connectivity is obtained from cells in both deep and superficial layers whereas thalamocortical output is onto deep layers. Photo-stimulation techniques recently revealed excitatory circuits (Weiler et al., 2008) connecting to various regions. Synaptic transmission is regulated by calcium binding protein containing interneurons which include parvalbumin (PV), calbindin (CB), and calretinin (CR) expressing cells in rats and mice (Celio 1990; Van Bredrode et al., 1991;
Resibois and Rogers 1992; Mucignat-Caretta et al., 2002) most of these neurons appear in two bands which correspond to LII/III and LV/VI. In spite of well-established long-range connections between M1 and other regions of cortex as well as M1 and sub-cortical connections in rodents, far less is known about intrinsic circuit organization in rat M1 compared to other cortical regions.

1.10 Primary somatosensory cortex (S1)

Brain architecture studies were started in 20th century (Broadmann, 1909; Vogt and Vogt, 1919; Von Economo, 1929) but only in the middle of this century were various sensory parts of the brain like auditory cortex, visual cortex, and somatosensory cortex described (Woolsey et al., 1946, 1958). Primary somatosensory cortex (S1) which is also called a Broadmann Area 3b and consists of a mediolateral strip of cortex that extends from the medial wall of the cerebral hemisphere towards the lateral sulcus, where it curves anterior and ends on the ventral surface of the frontal cortex. S1 is known to share a similar anatomical structure within various species except the absence of barrel cortex in humans.

1.10.1 Layer I

L1 of S1 is known to contribute to modulating feed forward transfer of information from thalamus (Galazo et al., 2008) but does not contain pyramidal cells (Ren et al., 1992). Also, known to have reciprocal connections with the arborizing pyramidal tufts of LII (Zhu and Zhu, 2004).

1.10.2 Layer II/III

LII and III have high proportion of pyramidal cells, densely packed but no apical dendrites in LII whilst there are apical dendrites in LIII that extend to LII. Inputs to LII are from LIV and LV whereas LIII inputs are only from LIV (Lefort, 2009), but outputs extend to LVa and LVI. LII is known to process long range connections to M1 (Alloway, 2008)

1.10.3 Layer IV

LIV also known as Barrel cortex in rodents contains star pyramidal cells and spiny stellate cells. Input projections are known to be from lemniscus thalamus (Gibson et al., 1999; Bureau et al., 2006) and from neurons within same column (Feldmeyer et al., 1999; Petersen and Sakmann, 2000) besides intracolumnar projections and trans-columnar projections form LIV (Schubert et al., 2003; Egger et al., 2008; Staiger et al., 2009;). Douglas and his colleagues described “canonical microcircuit” which is a closed loop comprising of series of excitatory feed forward connection, which were innervated by thalamus LIV via the lemniscal pathway which in turn projects to LII and LIII (Douglas et al.,
1989). In rodents, every whisker is characterised by well-structured arrangement almost similar to whisker layout (Woolsey and Vander Loos, 1970).

1.10.4 Layer V

LV receives feedback from LVI (Mercer et al., 2005). LVa constitutes medium principal neurons projecting to M1 and striatum (Alloway, 2008), connections have been reported from the layer itself as well as LIV. LVb contains very large pyramidal cells (Schubert et al., 2001) and IB neurons which are involved sub-cortical connections (de Kock and Sakmann, 2008). Projections from this layer have been identified to be thalamus to trigeminal nucleus and spinal cord.

1.10.5 Layer VI

Layer VI in S1 is characterised as LVla and b. whilst the former contain spiny pyramidal neurons LVlb contains fewer neurons and is known to intermingle with horizontal pathways (Clancy and Cauller, 1999). Input projections to this layer are from LV and LIV (Mercer et al., 2005; lefort et al., 2009) and output projections are reciprocally connected to thalamus, reticular nucleus and ventrobasal nucleus (Ledergerber and larkum, 2010)

1.11 Sensorimotor circuit

Mao et al., managed to sketch a vibrissal sensorimotor loop in mice (Mao et al., 2011) by assembling their long-range connections with local cortical circuits (Lefort et al., 2009; Sato and Svoboda, 2010; Hooks et al., 2011) and thalamocortical circuits (Lu and Lin, 1993; Bureau et al., 2006; Petreanu et al., 2009; Meyer et al., 2010b). When some external input triggers sensory neurons in trigeminal ganglion activity passes via the brain stem, VPM and to LIV of S1 (Petersen 2007; Sato and Svoboda, 2010). LIV projections activate LI/III which in turn activates LVb (Armstrong-James and Fox, 1987; Brecht and Sakmann, 2002; Brecht et al., 2003; Manns et al., 2004; Lefort et al., 2009; Hooks et al., 2011). Projections from LI/III and LVa connect to M1 with strong targets mostly in upper layers such as LI/III and LVa but also have weak projections to LVb and LVI (Mao et al., 2011). LI and LVa which receive strong input from S1 reciprocate projections back to S1 unto LI/III, LVa and strong synapses were found in LVb (Petreanu et al., 2009) making a dual synaptic feedback loop (S1, L2/3/5A ←→ M1, L2/3/5A) creating connection between M1 and S1 as described in figure 1.9.
Figure 1.9 Sensorimotor circuit representing reciprocal and long-range connections.

Trans-cortical projections from M1 to S1 are represented in purple and red for projections from S1 to M1. Intra-cortical projections are denoted in blue, LII/III to LVa, LII/LIII to LVa and LVb in M1, LIV to LII/III, LII/III to LVb, LVa to LII/III in S1. Thickness of the lines represent connection strength. Targets of M1 include (LVb and LVI to PO (posterior thalamic nucleus) magenta, brainstem nuclei (LVb to BS, green), superior colliculus (LVa and LVb to SC, cyan), Zona inserta (LVa and LVb to ZI, orange). Adapted from Mao et al., 2011.

1.12 Types of cells in cortex

Neurons in cortex are categorised as excitatory (glutamatergic/principal) pyramidal or stellate cells (pyramid or star-like like morphology) and inhibitory (GABAergic) non-pyramidal interneurons cells. In cortex, principal cells constitute about 80 % (Gao and Zheng, 2004; Halabisky et al., 2006) whilst the rest comprises interneurons which play a critical role in regulating cortical activity and rhythmogenesis (Beaulieu et al., 1992).

1.12.1 Pyramidal cells constitute most of the neuronal population and are known to be prime output cells in M1 (Sliper et al., 1979). These cells also contribute to excitatory inputs within the local circuit in M1 due to the presence of axonal collaterals (Douglas and Martin, 2004). Electrophysiological studies in rats revealed two types of pyramidal cells in sensorimotor slices (Connors et al., 1982; McCormick et al., 1985; Van Brederode and Snyder; 1992; Chen et al., 1996). Intrinsically bursting (IB) neurons are identified by their bursts of spikes followed by non-adapting and low frequency action potentials. In contrast to regular spiking (RS), pyrmoidal cells show adaptation in spike frequency (Chen et al., 1996).

Layer V of M1 is characterised with specialised large, pyramidal cells called Betz cells like Meynert cells in visual cortex (Betz, 1874). Betz cells are 20 times the size of other
pyramidal cells in deep layers of cortex and constitute up to 12% of total pyramidal population (Rivara et al., 2003). Betz cells are classified into two types depending upon their projections. Type I cells have thick, tufted apical dendrites and perform intrinsic burst firing activity (Molnar and Cheung 2006) and have their projections to striatum, superior colliculus, spinal cord and basal pons. Type II Betz cells are always regular spiking and have slender and obliquely aligned apical dendrites (Molnar and Cheung, 2006). These cells have their projections to ipsilateral striatum or contralateral hemisphere. Betz cells are further categorised depending on the increase or decrease of firing rate upon the injection of hyperpolarising current (Spain 1991a, 1991b, 1994). Betz cells are larger but fewer in the superficial region (LVa) than in deep area (LVb).

1.12.2 Interneurons constitute a minority of the population yet are crucial for controlling network activity by forming short range connections and are known to inhibit the target cells by releasing GABA (McBain and Fishan, 2001; Somogyi and Klausberger 2005). Interneurons are often categorised based on morphology, physiology, histology but it is rather difficult to categorise them using electrophysiological methods due to overlapping characteristics (Kawaguchi, 1993; Jones, 1993; McBain and Fisahn, 2001). Broadly speaking, however, electrophysiological classification in M1 has revealed four types of interneurons: low threshold spiking (LTS), fast spiking cells (FS), regular spiking non-pyramidal cells (RSNP) and late spiking cells (LS) (Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997) as described in table below.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cell type</th>
<th>RMP (mV)</th>
<th>Spike width (ms)</th>
<th>Neurochemical substances</th>
<th>Morphological type</th>
<th>Synaptic targets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FS</td>
<td>-77.4-73.0</td>
<td>0.43-0.59</td>
<td>parvalbumin, cholecystokinin</td>
<td>basket, chandelier</td>
<td>soma, AIS, thick dendrites</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RSNP</td>
<td>-66.0-60.06</td>
<td>0.75-1.06</td>
<td>somatostatin</td>
<td>Martinotti</td>
<td>thin dendritic branches</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LTS, BSNP</td>
<td>~57.5</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>VIP, calretinin, NPY</td>
<td>double bouquet</td>
<td>dendrites, soma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>~67.2</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>calbindin</td>
<td>neurogliaform</td>
<td>dendritic spines</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.1 Types of interneurons that M1 may contain and their properties

Various types of cells based on electrophysiological properties: FS (fast spiking), RSNP (regular spiking non-pyramidal), LTS (low threshold spiking), LS (late spiking). Neurochemical classification (immune positive to): parvalbumin, cholecystokinin, somatostatin, calretinin, calbindin. Morphological classification (based on the shape): Basket, chandelier, Martinotti, double bouquet, Neurogliaform. RMP: resting membrane potential (mV) FS<LS<RSNP<LTS, and spike width (ms), FS<LS≤RSNP<LTS. (Kawaguchi, 1995; Halasy et al., 1996; Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997; Cauli et al., 1997).

Fast spiking cells (FS) are basket and chandelier type which fire at high frequency (non-adapting) upon depolarising current. They exhibit short half-width action potentials (AP) but large afterhyperpolarisation (AHP). FS cells are immunopositive for parvalbumin and cholecystokinin proteins (Kawaguchi, 1993a, 1993b; Kawaguchi, 1995; Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997; Galarreta and Hestrin, 2002). Late spiking (LS) are neurogliaform cells with symmetrical dendrites. They show a delay in onset of action potential preceded by slow ramp to threshold level (Chu et al., 2003). Firing can be generated from hyperpolarised and depolarised states and they also show non-adapting patterns of firing. These cells are immunopositive to calbindin. (Kawaguchi, 1995; Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1996). Low threshold spiking (LTS) are double bouquet-like cells, immunopositive for calretinin. These cells show multiple spike behaviour on current injection (Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997; McBain and Fisahn, 2001). Regular spiking non-pyramidal cells (RSNP) are different to those that are described above. Regular and adapting spike behaviour was noticed.
displaying two groups based on the “notch” after spike behaviour upon application of depolarising current (Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1996, 1997 and 1998).

1.12.3 Inhibition in cortex

Synaptic inhibition in cortex is present in diverse groups of GABAergic interneurons (as described above in 1.12.2 section) and are classified based on their morphology, chemical and electrical properties (Fishell and Rudy, 2011). There are distinct subtypes of interneurons based on the chemical they produce which include: Parvalbumin (PV) neurons, somatostatin (SOM) neurons, vasoactive intestinal polypeptides (VIPs) producing neurons and calbindin (CB) in mouse neocortex (Xu et al., 2010). PV neurons are identified to target cell bodies and proximal dendrites of pyramidal cells to control pyramidal activity (Thomson and Lamy, 2007, Tanaka et al., 2011). The mutual connections between basket shaped fast spiking neurons have also been reported to be primarily on soma and proximal dendrites in majority of populations by performing paired recording experiments and light microscopic analyses (Gupta et al., 2000; Tamas et al., 2000). However, immunoreactivity for connexin36 protein has revealed that gap junctions were distributed not just on proximal but the distal dendrites in rat neocortex (Fukuda and Kosaka, 2003; Fukuda et al., 2006). Martinotti cells which are SOM producing cells target distal dendrites of pyramidal cells (Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997). VIP+ and CR+ neurons have known to modulate local SOM+ cells enabling dendritic disinhibition to pyramidal neurons in cortex (Lee et al., 2013) and this disinhibition was found to be engaged in specific behavioural states. The activity of VIP+ cells was high in S1 during whisking (Lee et al., 2013)

1.13 Neurotransmitters, receptors and mechanism of action in cortex

1.13.1 GABA

γ-Aminobutyric acid (GABA) is the main inhibitory neurotransmitter in the mammalian central nervous system (CNS) (Bormann, 2000) which controls neuronal firing, network oscillation and regulates excitability of neurons (Kullmann et al., 2012). GABA was identified in brain tissue in 1950 (Roberts, 1950; Awapara, 1950) but the inhibitory action of GABA was only identified in 1956 by Takashi Hayashi and Nagai (Hayashi and Nagai, 1956; Hayashi, 1956). L-glutamic acid decarboxylase is an enzyme that promotes the synthesis of GABA in presynaptic neurons which is stored in synaptic vesicles (Jin et al., 2003). GABA is released at the synapse from vesicles upon neuronal activation. A number of GABA are released from a single vesicle fusion into synaptic cleft, raising the concentration of GABA in millimolar range (Mody et al., 1994; Mozrzymas et al., 2003; Mozrzymas 2004) which can act either on post synaptic receptors or on extra synaptic receptors by diffusing to
extracellular space. GABA transporters take up GABA away from postsynaptic receptors (Cherubini 2001; Deken et al., 2003). The balance between GABA release from synaptic vesicles and uptake of GABA by transporters regulate the extracellular GABA levels (Deken et al., 2003). Mode of action of GABA can be via fast acting ionotropic GABA\textsubscript{A} and GABA\textsubscript{C} receptors or slow acting metabotropic GABA\textsubscript{B} receptors (Bormann 2000). Ionotropic GABA\textsubscript{A} receptors are predominant type of GABA\textsubscript{A}Rs (Bowery et al., 1987) which are known to constitute about 20-50% synapses in the brain (Nutt and Malizia, 2001).

1.13.2 GABA\textsubscript{A}R are pentameric ion channels consisting of 21 distinct subunits ($\alpha1$-$8$, $\beta1$-$3$, $\gamma1$-$3$, $\delta$, $\varepsilon$, $\pi$, $\theta$ and $\rho1$-$3$) and a central pore which is permeable to anions (Cl$^-$ and HCO$_3^-$) (Bormann, 1987; Kaila, 1994; Wafford et al., 1996; Whiting et al., 1997; Wafford et al., 2005; see figure 1.10). The combination of various subunit binding sites creates ligand specific sites for benzodiazepines and barbiturates (Mohler, 1992; Wafford et al., 1993; Graham et al., 1996). GABA\textsubscript{A}Rs have been identified both pre- and post-synaptic neurons in various regions in the brain. In rats these receptors are found more in LII/III than in LV and are implicated to play a role in cortico-cortical connections (Jones and Wise, 1977; Jones et al., 1986). Moreover, GABA\textsubscript{A}R expression was found to be denser in sensory regions than motor regions (Zilles et al., 1995).

In most mature neurons, equilibrium potential of Cl$^-$ becomes more negative than resting membrane potential via KCC2 (potassium chloride co-transporter) activity which enables receptor activation with an influx of Cl$^-$ and response is measured as IPSP (inhibitory post synaptic potential). This hyperpolarisation effect and increase in conductance shunt excitatory inputs which in turn decreases the probability of action potential generation (Payne et al., 2003; Farrant and Nusser, 2005). However, hyperpolarising GABA input is not always functionally inhibitory as recovery from deep hyperpolarisation may sometimes activate excitatory conductances which generate rebound spikes (Chavas et al., 1994; Llinas et al., 1988). Similarly, when the concentration of Cl$^-$ is higher inside the cell, opening of GABA receptors may cause efflux of the anion, thereby generating action potentials (Staley, 1992; Owens et al., 1996). Interestingly, GABA response is depolarising in most immature neurons due to the lack of KCC2 and presence of NKCC1 (sodium and potassium coupled co-transporter) (Riwera et al., 1999; Riwera et al., 2005). The depolarising action of GABA is also seen in some mature neurons (Chavas et al., 2003; Stein et al., 2003), however, in mature cells under normal circumstances activation of GABA\textsubscript{A}R generates inhibition in two ways described below.
1.13.3 Types of Inhibition

1.13.3.1 Phasic Inhibition

Phasic inhibition is rapid (short lasting) and precise transmission mediated by synchronous activation of small number of GABA receptors at synapses. The mechanism involves the presynaptic calcium influx which initiates the fusion of vesicles that contain GABA upon arrival of an action potential. Each vesicle is known to release several thousand GABA molecules (with a synaptic concentration in mM) onto a few hundred receptors located on postsynaptic neurons. These receptors witness large number of molecules for a short duration enabling synchronous opening of the pore for Cl⁻ travel across the membrane generating IPSPs (Edwards et al., 1990; Mody et al., 1994; Nusser et al., 1997; Brickley et al., 1999). Studies using low affinity competitive antagonist revealed that decay of GABA concentration and GABA binding occurs at time constants of < 500 µs (Overstreet, 2002) and about 100 µs (Mozrzymas et al., 2003; Mozrzymas et al., 2004) respectively which inputs to short duration and fast diffusion from synapse. The occupancy of various receptors varies between synapses on a single neuron or on multiple neurons. Vesicle size, nature of fusion, geometry of synapse, arrangement of GABA transporters and postsynaptic receptor expression and conformational changes of receptors during ion transition are the various factors that contribute to phasic inhibition (Frerking et al., 1996; Nusser et al., 1997; Perrais et al., 1999; Hajos et al., 2000; Mozrzymas et al., 2003) leading to decrease in number of IPSCs and amplitude.
1.13.3.2 Tonic Inhibition

Tonic inhibition is long lasting transmission by activating non-synaptic GABA_{A}R (Connolly and Wafford, 2004), often via spilling of extracellular GABA causing diffusion away from the synaptic cleft which then activates receptors on extra- and peri-synaptic sites that contain alpha6 or delta subunits, which display a high affinity for GABA binding (Farrant and Nusser, 2005). This type of inhibition was reported in rat cerebellar granule cells in voltage clamp recording (Kaneda et al., 1995a), then in hippocampus (Semyanov et al., 2003), dentate gyrus (Nusser and Mody, 2002), pyramidal cells in LV of somatosensory cortex (Keros and Hablitz et al., 2005; Yamada et al., 2007). It was identified that pyramidal neurons may require an additional increase in GABA concentrations whilst interneurons are thought to display tonic inhibition without any external GABA (Seymanov et al., 2003; Scimemi et al., 2005). It was evident that tonic activation was noticed in embryonic neurons prior to synapse formation (Valeyev et al., 1993; LoTurco et al., 1995; Owen et al., 1999; Demarque et al., 2002). Several studies revealed that reduction of spontaneous IPSCs as well as decrease in holding current suggesting the reduction in conductance due to the decrease in open GABA_{A}R channels (Kaneda et al., 1995b; Brickely et al., 1996; Tia et al., 1996; Wall et al., 1997). Ambient GABA may be enough to activate persistent tonic conductance which was thought to be nM to mM concentration range (Tossman, 1986; Lerma et al., 1986; Kennedy et al., 2002; Xi et al., 2003). Tonic currents play a role in setting the frequency of neuronal network oscillations, hence tonic NMDAR activity on interneurons in mouse CA3 increase the frequency of gamma oscillations while delta subunit containing GABA_{A}R mediated tonic inhibition decreases gamma frequency (Mann and Mody, 2010). Therefore, the balance between tonic inhibition and tonic excitation is critical for modulating gamma oscillations via progressive interneuronal synchronisation (Mann and Mody, 2010).

1.13.4 GABA_{B}R are G-protein coupled metabotropic receptors (Hill and Bowery, 1981, Bowery et al., 1983, Bowery, 2002) which acts via intracellular transduction cascades by regulating calcium and potassium channels and are expressed in both presynaptic and postsynaptic neurons (Axmacher and Draguhn, 2004). Reversal potential of slow IPSP mediated by GABA_{B}R is -100 mV. Pre-synaptically, they have been implicated in inducing membrane hyperpolarisation or shunting the action potential by inhibiting the opening of voltage gated Ca^{2+} channels leading to inhibition of GABA release. Post-synaptically, they generate long lasting hyperpolarisation by activating inwardly rectifying K^{+} channels (GIRK channels) (Gage, 1992; Kulik, 2006). GABA_{B}Rs can be pharmacologically isolated by activation via baclofen and blocked by 2-OH-saclofen (Terunuma et al., 2010).
1.14 Glutamate

Glutamate is a crucial excitatory neurotransmitter in CNS and has been known to play a significant role in several functions (Hollmann and Heinemann, 1994; Monaghan et al., 1989). Glutamate acts on two different type of receptors: ionotropic and metabotropic (Pin and Duvosin, 1995). Ionotropic receptors (iGluR) are further divided (based on the agonist sensitivity) into AMPA (α-amino-3-hydroxy-5-methyl-4-isoxazole-propionic acid), NMDA (N-methyl-d-aspartate) and KA (Kainate) receptors (Watkins and Evans, 1981). Metabotropic receptors (mGluR) are categorised to three groups (I, II and III) which are G-protein coupled receptors (Nakanishi, 1994).

1.14.1 AMPAR are tetrameric, either homo or heteromeric (Nakanishi et al., 1990; Rosenmund et al., 1998) structures formed of different combination of subunits: GluA1-4 (Keinanen et al. 1990; Hollmann, 1999; Dingledine, 1999). AMPARs are activated directly by glutamate leading to postsynaptic membrane potential by allowing the influx of Na⁺ and K⁺. Therefore, the reversal potential EPSP mediated via non-NMDAR (AMPA) is 0 mV. Different combinations of AMPAR subunits have significant impact on receptor functions as the receptor kinetics and ion selectivity are dependent on subunit compositions (see review Traynelis et al., 2010). For instance, slow gating properties have been identified in a receptor containing GluA2 subunit compared to one that lack GluA2 subunit (Lomeli et al., 1994; Swanson et al., 1997) and increased receptor kinetics was identified in receptors containing GluA4 subunit (Swanson et al., 1997). PV-positive hippocampal interneurons are known to express low GluA2 and high GluA4 (Geiger et al., 1995; Pelkey et al., 2015) resulting in rapid EPSPs and high Ca²⁺ permeability (Geiger et al., 1995; Lawrence and McBain, 2003) when compared to pyramidal cells (Hestrin, 1993). GluA2 subunit containing AMPAR have been found to be Ca²⁺ impermeable whilst the other subunits combine to form a Ca²⁺ permeable receptors (Hollmann et al., 1991; Verdoorn et al. 1991). The expression of fast acting Ca²⁺ permeable AMPAR on fast spiking interneurons was found to be a requirement for control of oscillatory activity (Bartos et al., 2007, Hu et al., 2014). Also, PV-positive interneurons of cortex have shown a correlation between action potential timing and EPSCs which are AMPAR mediated (Helm et al., 2013). Moreover, over expression of GluA2 subunit in GAD67-positive interneurons has shown significant disruption in long range synchronization (Fuchs et al., 2001). Furthermore, GluA1 and A4 subunit KO on PV-positive interneurons altered gamma oscillations and hippocampal memory (Fuchs et al., 2007). These studies (above) suggest a role of subunit combination in network entrainment and a need for new subunit specific targets.
Rapid kinetics of AMPAR produces fast EPSPs which enables rapid synaptic transmission in CNS. Gamma oscillations have been found to decrease in power in rats upon the application of AMPAR antagonists or by genetically reducing AMPA currents implying a significant role of this receptor in the maintenance of gamma oscillations (Cunningham et al., 2003, 2004; Palhalmi et al., 2004; Fuchs et al., 2007). In contrast, a study by Fisahn et al., (2004) on mice demonstrated that AMPAR antagonist did not alter oscillation suggesting AMPAR do not contribute to gamma oscillations. These contradicting reports of AMPAR sensitivity could be due to the species like rat vs mouse, the area of experiment: hippocampus (AMPAR-sensitive) or entorhinal cortex (insensitive) and AMPAR antagonists used (SYM2206, GYKI 53655).

1.14.2 NMDAR are tetramers, consists of GluN1 and GluN2 (A-D) subunits (Hollmann, 1999; Dingledine, 1999) with GluN1 being the obligatory subunit for functional receptors and most receptors comprising combinations of GluN1 and GluN2 subunits of various subtypes. When the pore is open, Ca\(^{2+}\) influx is initiated by which various intracellular process such as second messenger signalling cascades in the post-synaptic neuron are activated due to rather slow activation and deactivation kinetics of NMDARs when compared to AMPAR. But, the permeability of these receptors at hyperpolarised membranes (negative membrane potentials) is limited due to the block of the receptor pore by Mg\(^{2+}\). Hence, the activation of NMDAR requires depolarisation (>40 mV) (Mayer, 1984; Nowak, 1984). NMDAR expression varies across various brain regions and is known to be regulated by development and disease conditions (Watanabe et al., 1992; Monyer et al., 1994; Akbarian et al., 1996; Purcell et al., 2001; The pharmacological properties of these receptors have been known to be determined by subunit compositions (McBain and Mayer, 1994; Traynelis et al., 2010). NMDARs containing GluN2A generate rapid kinetics whilst those containing GluN2B have slower kinetics and GluN2C and GluN2D even slower kinetics. The slowest decay (τ ~ 2s) was identified in receptors with di-heteromeric receptors of GluN1 and GluN2D subunits (Vicini et al., 1998). Knockout mice studies revealed that slow gating GluN2B and GluN2D are highly expressed in early development stages, whilst, GluN2A is highly expressed at later stages which enhance the synaptic responses in hippocampus (von Engelhardt et al., 2015).

Earlier findings assumed that NMDARs have minimal contribution to fast synaptic transmissions in interneurons when compared to pyramidal cells. However, various studies after extensive research suggested that NMDAR contribution depend on subunit composition and type of interneuron. NMDAR mediated EPSPs have been documented at low levels of Mg\(^{2+}\) (Bekkers and Stevens, 1989; Watt et al., 2000; Myme et al., 2003) or at depolarised potentials (McBain and Dingledine, 1992). It is interesting to note that NMDAR
correlates with AMPAR expressed on same neuron (McBain and Dingledine, 1993, Monyer et al., 1994; Matta et al., 2013; von Engelhardt et al., 2015). When NMDA mediated currents were pharmacologically blocked synapses containing AMPA/NMDAR has shown a significant decrease in summation of EPSPs and hence reduction in action potential firing irrespective of ratios of AMPA/NMDARs (Lei and McBain, 2002). Augmented activation of NMDAR has been observed in stroke and trauma (Nicoletti et al., 1996) also in neurodegenerative disease like Parkinson’s and Huntington’s (Shaw, 1993).

1.14.3 KAR are homo or heteromeric structured, consisting of following subunits: GluK1 (GluR5) (Bettler et al., 1990), GluK2 (GluR6) (Egebjerg et al., 1991), GluK3 (GluR7) (Bettler et al., 1992), GluK4 (KA1) or GluK5 (KA2) (Werner et al., 1991; Herb et al., 1992, Lerma, 2001; for review see Traynelis et al., 2010 and Akgul and McBain, 2016). KARs were expressed widely in the brain both on pyramidal neurons and interneurons (Wisden and Seeburg, 1993). Higher expression of GluK1, 2 and 4 have been identified on interneurons that regulate both pre- and post-synaptic activity (Fisahn et al., 2004; Lein et al., 2007; see review Carta et al., 2014). Post-synaptic KAR are known to modulate neuronal excitability by integrating only excitatory synapses, due to their slow kinetics (Frerking and Nicoll, 2000; Pinheiro et al., 2013). However, KARs located pre-synaptically regulate NT release at both inhibitory and excitatory synapses (Cossart et al., 2001; Lerma and Marques, 2013). Exogenous application of micromolar concentration of KA pre-synaptically reduced inhibitory effects of CA1 interneurons on to principal cells (Fisher and Alger, 1984; Kehl et al., 1984; Rodriguez-Moreno et al., 1997). Various pharmacological and genetic experiments have revealed conflicting results due to poor receptor specific pharmacology as well as lack of specific targets (Mulle et al., 2000; Fishan et al., 2004). KAR, like AMPAR are activated by glutamate release but are known to have much slower kinetics (decay t ~10 ms) and low amplitude EPSCs (Cossart et al., 2002; Goldin et al., 2007). KAR, sometimes act via metabotropic mechanisms without depending on depolarisation (Rodriguez-Moreno and Lerma, 1998; Frerking et al., 2001). In a study by Frerking and Ohliger-Frerking (2002) revealed that AMPAR induce transient, variable membrane depolarisations, whilst KARs trigger tonic depolarisations with low variability.

Application of nano molar concentration of KA (and/or CCh) has generated persistent gamma oscillations in vitro in primary motor cortex (Johnson, 2016), somatosensory cortex (Buhl et al., 1998; Cunningham et al., 2003), hippocampus (Hajos et al., 2000, Hormuzdi et al., 2001, Fisahn et al., 2001, Modebadze, 2014). GluK1 and K2 KO mice experiments performed have revealed a critical role of these subunits since it was not possible to induce gamma oscillations (Fisahn et al., 2004). It was assumed in this study that GluK1 KARs were localised on the axons of interneurons and did not contribute to oscillatory activity.
whilst GluK2 subunit containing KARs were located on somato-dendritic area of
interneurons and pyramidal cells which enhanced action potential firing upon activation,
which enabled GABA and glutamate release. However, it was not possible to induce
oscillatory activity in the presence of GluK1 antagonists suggesting the role of this subunit
in maintaining gamma oscillations (Stanger et al., 2008). Moreover, KARs have been
implicated in spike entrainment at theta frequencies in oriens lacunosum-moleculare (OLM)
cells (Goldin et al., 2007) suggesting a significant role of KARs in oscillatory activity.
Furthermore, KARs have implicated to contribute to slow wave oscillations SWO, as SWO
was abolished upon the application of the GluK1-selective KAR antagonist, UBP302
(Cunningham et al., 2006; Sheroziya et al., 2009). Interestingly, KAR also plays a critical
role in epilepsy since systemic administration of KA has been used as a widely accepted
model for investigating seizures like those observed in temporal epilepsy (TLE) (Ben-Ari et
al., 1985).

iGluRs are known to play a significant role in synchronising network activity by recruiting
inhibitory interneurons. Recent subunit knockout studies (Akgul and McBain et al., 2016)
revealed the sub-unit composition expressed on type of interneurons were involved in the
network oscillations (some examples are shown in table below).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>sub-unit knockout</th>
<th>Interneuron subtype</th>
<th>physiological effect</th>
<th>oscillatory effect</th>
<th>reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AMPAR (GluR1-4)</td>
<td>PV (PV-Cre), GAD67</td>
<td>decrease in AMPA mediated EPSPs, altered firing</td>
<td>altered gamma oscillations, disrupted long range synchrony</td>
<td>Fuchs et al., 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NMDAR (N2C, N2D)</td>
<td>GAD67, Ppp1r2-Cre</td>
<td>increased EPSP amplitude, decreased frequency</td>
<td>Reduced synchronous activity</td>
<td>Kelsch et al., 2012, Belforte et al., 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KAR (GluK1-2)</td>
<td>Global</td>
<td>does not increase IPSC frequency</td>
<td>disrupted/enhanced kainate induced gamma oscillations</td>
<td>Mulle et al., 2000, Fishan et al., 2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1.2 Role of iGluR subunits in various physiological and oscillatory activity Adapted from Akgul and McBain et al., 2016

1.14.4 mGluR are classified into three groups based on the subunit sequence homology. Postsynaptically expressed, group I (mGluR1, mGluR5) are positively coupled to phosphoinositide (PI) which increases cyclic AMP (cAMP) via second messenger cascades and are known to enhance neuronal excitation. In contrast, presynaptically expressed group II (mGluR2, mGluR3) and III (mGluR4, mGluR6, mGluR7, mGluR8) mGluRs are negatively coupled to adenylyl cyclase and inhibits cAMP which accounts for the reduction in synaptic transmission (decrease in excitation). Group II and III also regulate glutamate release by acting as auto receptors in presynaptic neurons (Schoepp et al., 1992; Shigermoto et al., 1997) playing a role in both LTP (upregulate glutamate release) and LTD (downregulate glutamate release) (Holscher et al., 1999). However, peri-synaptic expression of group I mGluR often regulate the excitability of neurons via iGluR channels (Shigermoto et al., 1993; Baude et al., 1993; Shigermoto et al., 1997). mGluRs have been implicated in many processes like neuronal development, neurodegeneration, synaptic plasticity, learning and memory (Nakanishi, 1994; Pin and Bockaert, 1995; Pin and Duvoisin, 1995; Conn and Pin, 1997; Dale et al., 2003).
1.15 Dopamine

Dopamine (DA), a catecholamine present in the brain, was identified as a neurotransmitter in 1972 (Brown and Maknman, 1972; Kebabian et al., 1972). Pharmacological evidence revealed the presence of more than one binding sites for DA. DA receptors can be classified as D1-like and D2-like based on their differential coupling to AC (Kabebian and Calne, 1979). D1 (D1 and D5) receptors activate Gαs/olf family of G-proteins and thus enhance cAMP. (Deary et al., 1990; Monsma et al., 1990; Zhou et al., 1990) and D1R are found exclusively on post synaptic neurons such as medium spiny neurons (MSNs) in striatum. D2 (D2, D3, D4) receptors unlike D1, are expressed in both pre- and postsynaptic terminals and known to be negatively coupled to AC via Gαi/o family of G proteins (Sokoloff et al., 2006; Rankin et al., 2010; Rondou et al., 2010). It is evident that DA induces long lasting effect via different mechanisms (reviewed in Jay 2003; Luft and Schwarz, 2009) which include: intracellular Ca^{2+} levels (via L-type channels) increase and decrease upon activation of D1 and D2 receptors respectively (Neve et al., 2004), increased cAMP due to the activation of D1R (but not D2R) activates (protein kinase A) PKA which in turn enhances the currents mediated by AMPA and NMDA receptors (Snyder et al., 1998; Gurden et al., 2000; Wang and O’Donell, 2001) as illustrated in the figure 1.10.

Figure 1.11 Representation of various signal transduction mechanisms of action D1-like and D2-like receptors.

D1-like receptors are positively coupled to AC whilst the opposite is true for D2-like receptors and their corresponding effects on K^+ channels, Arachinoid acid, Na^+/H^+ exchange, Na^+-K^+-ATPase. + indicates positively coupled and – indicates negative coupling, AC-adenylate cyclase, PLC- phospholipase C (adapted from Missale et al., 1988).
The physiological roles of DA include (but are not limited to) sleep, immune system, renal functions and sympathetic regulatory function (Snyder et al., 1970; Missale et al., 1998; Sibley, 1999; Carlsson, 2001; Iversen and Iversen, 2007). On the other hand, several studies have implicated a role of DA in pathological conditions such as Parkinson’s disease from loss of dopaminergic innervation (Ehringer and Hornykiewicz, 1960), Schizophrenia (Snyder et al., 1970; Creese et al., 1976; Seeman et al., 1976; Carlsson et al., 2001) and associated with drug abuse (Hyman et al., 2006; Di Chiara and Bassareo, 2007; Koob and Volkow, 2010).

Network activity in primary motor cortex (M1) has been shown to be modulated by DA (Alexander et al., 1986). D1 and D2 receptors have a crucial role in direct and indirect pathways associated with Parkinson’s disease (Ueki et al., 2006). D1R is more abundant than D2R in rat cortex (Boyson et al., 1986). M1 and PFC (pre-frontal cortex) show similar organization of DR although M1 expresses fewer DR than PFC (Lidow et al., 1989). The laminar distribution of both receptors is found to correspond to dopaminergic terminals in M1 which are predominately in deep layers (LV and LVI) (Martes et al., 1985; Dawson et al., 1986).

Additionally, recent studies have indicated that DA modulates tonic currents in various regions of brain (Aman et al., 2006; Yague et al., 2013; Liang et al., 2014) and may directly inhibit GABA-R (Hoerbelt et al., 2015). These novel activities of DA may impel new definitions of dopaminergic signalling in the brain.
1.16 Aims and Objectives

The primary objective of this thesis is to explore the oscillatory cortical dynamics at different frequencies that were induced by various pharmacological manipulations. Given the inadequate in vitro research, we aimed to explore delta, nested theta and gamma oscillations in primary motor and sensory cortices in rat brain slices. Studies have implicated M1 in execution of voluntary movements and S1 in sensory information from both local network in vitro and whole brain in vivo perspectives and interactions between these two regions are known to play critical roles in motor learning and control skills (Asanuma and Arissian, 1984; Asanuma and Pavlides, 1997) which forms the basis for choosing M1 and S1 in our study.

Objectives:

- To explore oscillatory activity in primary motor cortex (M1) and primary sensory cortex (S1) using KA and CCh using extracellular, local field potential (LFP) recordings from control rats.
- To induce and characterise the origin and mechanisms involved in delta oscillations in M1 and S1 using pharmacological manipulations.
- To investigate interactions between rhythms in M1 and S1.
- To examine the role of dopamine in tonic and phasic inhibition by using single cell patch clamp technique.
2 Methods
2.1 Animals and ethical approval

All the experiments were carried out in accordance with the Animals (Scientific Procedures) Act 1986 UK, European Communities Council Directive 1986 (86/609/EEC) and the Aston University ethical review document.

2.2 Slice preparation

Sagittal slices containing primary motor cortex (M1) and somatosensory cortex (S1) were obtained from male Wistar rats (50-70 g). Initially, rats were anesthetized by placing them in a chamber containing 2% isoflurane and N₂/O₂ and then by injecting pentobarbital (600 mg/kg) subcutaneously (SC). Xylazine (100 mg/kg) was administered through the intramuscular route and when pedal reflexes were completely lost transcardial perfusion was performed with ice-cold sucrose based artificial cerebrospinal fluid (aCSF). aCSF contained (mM): 180 sucrose, 2.5 KCl, 10 MgSO₄, 25 NaHCO₃, 1.25 NaH₂PO₄, 0.5 CaCl₂, 10 glucose, 1 L-ascorbic acid, 2 N-acetyl-L-cysteine, 1 taurine, 20 ethyl pyruvate. Neuroprotectants such as 0.04 indomethacin, 0.3 uric acid and 0.2 aminoguanidine were also added and aCSF was saturated with carbogen (95% O₂, 5% CO₂). The brain was carefully extracted and sagittal slices of 450 μm thickness for extracellular recordings and 350 μm thickness for intracellular recording were prepared using a vibrating microtome (Campden Instruments, UK) using the same solution at room temperature. Prepared slices for extracellular recording were then stored in an interface chamber (Scientific System Design Inc., Canada) whereas slices for intracellular recording were submerged in aCSF which was constantly bubbled with carbogen at room-temperature and was composed of glucose-based aCSF containing (mM): 126 NaCl, 3 KCl, 1.6 MgSO₄, 26 NaHCO₃, 1.25 NaH₂PO₄, 2 CaCl₂, 10 glucose. 0.04 of indomethacin (a cyclooxygenase inhibitor) and 0.3 of uric acid were added as neuro-protectants to improve cell viability (Pakhotin et al., 1997; Rice et al., 1994). Slices for extracellular recordings were then immediately transferred carefully unto a recording chamber (Scientific System Design Inc., Canada), where they were perfused with glucose-based aCSF at a flow rate of 2 ml/min for an hour before recording. PTC03 proportional temperature controller (Scientific System Design Inc., Canada) was used to maintain 33-34 °C. Slices for intracellular recording were placed in submerged holding chamber for an hour prior to being placed into a submerged recording chamber and allowed to settle for 15 minutes prior to recording.
Figure 2.1 Representation of various types of rat brain slice preparations used for extracellular and intracellular recordings.

Nissl stained sagittal sensory motor slice locating Primary motor cortex (M1) and primary somatosensory cortex (S1). Adapted from The Rat Brain Atlas (Paxinos and Waston, 1998). **A)** Sensory motor sagittal slice with both M1 and S1 intact, areas of each region were represented by lines. **B)** Sensory motor sagittal slice with a micro-cut made between M1 and S1 regions only, which was represented by a dashed line. **C)** Primary motor cortex sagittal slice (boxed area) segregated from sensory motor slice. **D)** Primary somatosensory cortex (boxed area) segregated from sensory motor slice. Cut was made all through the slice separating M1 and S1 which was represented by dashed line in C and D. **E)** micro slice with just M1 and S1, isolated from rest of the slice (boxed area). **F)** M1 slice isolated from a sensory motor slice with surroundings intact. This type of slice was used for intracellular recordings whereas all the other types of slices were used for extracellular recordings.
The M1 region of the cortex was identified as being dorsal to the lateral ventricle and the caudal extent of the striatum and S1 being adjacent to M1 dorsal to hippocampus. With the aid of The Rat Brain Atlas (Paxinos and Waston, 1998) various types of slices were prepared based on regions of interest as illustrated in figure 2.1. These different types of slices were used to perform region-specific studies and correlation studies. Type A slices were 450 µm in thickness used for extracellular recordings. This type of slice contain intact M1 and S1 and recordings were made from one region or simultaneously from both regions. Type B slices are the same as type A except a cut (dashed line in figure 2.1) was made between M1 and S1 using a surgical scalpel blade and were carefully transferred on to the recording chamber where they were settled for an hour before recording. Simultaneous recordings were made from this type of slice which was used to determine the correlation between rhythms in the two regions. Type C slices were again 450 µm thick and were used for extracellular recordings. M1 was isolated from sensory motor slice by cutting all through the slice and boxed region from the figure C was used for region-specific recording. Type D slices were same as type C but this type has S1 isolated (boxed region) from the sensory motor slice. Type E slices were also 450 µm thick and were used for extracellular recordings but this type is a micro slice with just M1 and S1 isolated from rest of the sensory motor slice. This isolation was made diligently with surgical scalpel blade and were transferred to the recording chamber. Type F slices were 350 µm thick and were used for intracellular recordings. This type of slice had M1 with surroundings intact (boxed region in figure 2.1). These slices were carefully transferred to and submersion chamber to settle before experiments. All the recordings were made from layer V of both M1 and S1 (unless otherwise stated) which was located through visual inspection using microscope (Olympus BX51W1, Japan) unless otherwise stated.

2.3 Extracellular recordings

Local Field Potentials (LFPs) of neuronal network activity were recorded using an extracellular field potential technique. LFPs reflect local neuronal network mechanisms of a specific brain region and are known to arise from activity within approximately 250 µm at the tip of electrode. These recordings are often used to investigate synchronous activity of neuronal networks (Logothesis, 2003; Mitzdorf, 1985; 1987; Rasch et al., 2007). A Flaming-Brown micropipette puller (Sutter Instruments, CA) was used to pull borosilicate glass microelectrodes with open tip resistance of 2-3 MΩ which were placed into Layer V of M1 and/or S1 using the rat brain atlas of Paxinos and Watson (Paxinos and Waston, 2012) as a reference by viewing under a LEIÇA MZ6 field microscope. The activity was recorded using an EXT amplifier head-stage (NPI electronics GMBH, Germany) mounted on to a
A manually operated micromanipulator (MM-33; Narishige, Japan). The signal was amplified 10 x using an LHBF-48X preamplifier/signal conditioner (NPI, Germany) set to band-pass filter between 700 Hz and 0.1 Hz and then amplified a further 100 times using EXT-102F amplifier (NPI, Germany). Humbugs (Quest Scientific, Canada) signal conditioners were used to eliminate low amplitude (<100 μV p-p) 50 Hz noise. The signal was simultaneously digitised using a CED 1401 digital converter in to a disk using Spike2 software (figure 2.2).

Figure 2.2 The extracellular local field potential recording setup

The signal from micro-electrode which was mounted onto head stage was amplified 100x by EXT 10-2F amplifier (1), 50 Hz noise was eliminated by humbugs (2), signal was further amplified (x10) and high and low pass filtered by LHBF-48X amplifiers (3) signals was then converted from analogue to digital signal by CED 1401 digitizer (4) recordings were made and saved on a PC (5).
2.3 Intracellular recordings

Patch clamp technique was used to make whole cell recordings of synaptic currents. A Flaming-Brown micropipette puller (Sutter Instruments, CA) was used to pull borosilicate glass microelectrodes of 4-6 MΩ. The tip of the electrode filled with internal solution (composition below) was then carefully placed on the surface of the neurons located visually using infra-red video microscopy with differential inference contrast (DIC) optics (Olympus, BX51WI) which enabled the visibility of neurons located in deep surface of the slice. Cells with smooth edges tend to give successful patch recordings. Slight positive pressure was applied from inside the electrode to maintain the resistance of the electrode by keeping off contamination. The tip of the electrode was advanced onto the chosen cell. Pipette offset was reset to zero and signs for slight rise in resistance and indentation of the cell membrane were examined, which indicates the electrode tip was on the neuron surface. As soon as the tip was confirmed to have contacted the membrane, positive pressure was turned off and a natural suction was noticed, after which gentle mouth suction was applied to seal the tip onto the membrane. At this stage pipette capacitance was compensated. When gigaseal (>1 GΩ as measured using a 5 mV step injected at line frequency) was observed, a gentle suction was applied to rupture the membrane under the patch electrode tip, with the pipette holding current set to -70 mV. A sudden appearance of large capacitance transients at the leading and trailing edges of the pulse is an indication of successful breakthrough.

2.3.1 Voltage clamp

Voltage clamp technique was used to characterise phasic and tonic inhibitory currents in the layer V of M1 of the rat brain atlas of Paxinos and Watson as a reference. In this technique membrane potential was held constant (-70 mV) so that the current flow resulting from ion channel opening was measured in pA in the form of Inhibitory Post Synaptic currents (IPSCs). Electrodes used for this purpose were filled with internal solution containing (in mM): 100 CSCI (blocks K+ channels), 40 HEPES (buffering agent, maintains pH), 1 Qx-314 (voltage activated Na+ channel blocker), 0.6 EGTA (calcium chelator), 5 MgCl2 (salt), 10 TEA-Cl (blocks K+ channels), 80ATP-Na, GTP-Na and 1 IEM 1460 (AMPA blocker) (titrated with CsOH (to adjust pH =7.25) at 290-295 mOsm. This solution was maintained in ice-cold conditions as ATP and GTP degrade at room temperature and was stored at -20 degrees in aliquots until required. This chloride based solution (which has a Cl- equilibrium potential around 0 mV) enables the IPSCs to be recorded as apparent inward currents at -70 mV using Axopatch 700A amplifier (Molecular Devices, USA). Frequent measurements of series resistance (Rs) were made using the capacitance transient on a line-frequency voltage step (5 mV) during recording. Sampling rate of the recording was 10 KHz, filtered (8-pole low-pass Bessel filter) at 2 KHz which was digitised using a Digidata 1440A (figure
2.3). Under these conditions of high internal Cl⁻ concentration, IPSCs were recorded as downward deflections ranging in amplitude from 10-500 pA. Since IPSC parameters were only compared prior to and following drug addition, whole cell capacitance and electrode series resistance were monitored, but not compensated. Recording in which series resistance (as measured at the peak of the capacitance transient recorded in response to seal test at 5 mV) changed by >25% were routinely rejected from analysis.

Figure 2.3 The patch clamp recording setup.

Slices were observed under microscope with differential interference (Nomarski) optics and a contrast enhancer (BRSL CE-4) (1), cells were visualised on a basic video monitor (Panasonic) (2), head stage on which microelectrode was mounted was connected to a manipulator which enables movement (Scientifica device) (6), Axopatch 700A amplifier (Molecular Devices, USA) (4), signal was digitised using Digidata 1440A (Axon Instruments, Molecular devices) (5). Digitised data were recorded and saved on a standard PC (3). Water heater circulator C-85A (7).
2.5 Drugs

All drugs were obtained from Tocris, Sigma-Aldrich, Abcam, Actavis, Thermo Fisher Scientific and Sigma-Aldrich. Powdered drugs were diluted into 1-100 mM stock solutions using suitable solvents which were then stored at -20°C until use. Depending on the experimental design the drugs were added directly to perfusing aCSF in required amounts at desired concentration. The concentrations used throughout this thesis are both empirical and theoretical (literature).

2.6 Data collection and analysis

2.6.1 Extracellular (LFP) analysis

Data were analysed offline using Spike2 v7.1 software (Cambridge electronic design). To reconstruct the original signal below 200 Hz, the sampling rate was chosen to be 10 KHz based on Nyquist sampling theorem (Axon guide). The sampling frequency must be more than twice the frequency of the input signal to enable proper reconstruction of digital signal. Time-frequency analysis was performed to create power spectra using Fast Fourier Transform (FFT) algorithm where the waveform was divided to frequency components against power. The FFT block size used for theta and gamma oscillations was 8192 (0.983 s), results showed frequencies 0 to 4166.67 Hz in 4096 bins with a resolution of 1.01 Hz. For delta oscillations, 16384 (1.966 s), results showed frequencies 0 to 4166.67 Hz in 8192 bins with a resolution of 0.050 Hz. The obtained data were copied to Graph-Pad Prism 5 and 7 (GraphPad Software, Inc. USA) for further analysis. 60 second epochs were used to analyse rhythms. 2 seconds’ raw data presented in the figures throughout this thesis was filtered using a band pass second order Infinite impulse response (IIR) Bessel digital filter between 1 and 6 Hz for delta, between 5 and 13 Hz for theta, between 4 and 8 Hz for slow theta, between 22 and 30 Hz for beta and between 30 and 40 Hz for gamma oscillations. Filtering was performed on wider range for example in between 1 and 6 Hz for delta than corresponding frequency range (2-4 Hz) so that the data were not lost due to ‘rolling off’ effect from using IIR filters.

2.6.2 Intracellular analysis

Spontaneous IPSCs (sIPSCs) were recorded using Clampex10.2, viewed using Clampfit 10.2 (Molecular Devices, USA) and were analysed in the Mini-analysis programme (synaptosoft, USA).
2.6.3.1 Tonic current analysis

The method of Nusser and Mody (2002) was used to measure tonic currents to exclude confounding effects of IPSCs overlapping. A baseline current amplitude (pA) of a 5-ms epoch was taken every 100 ms. The mean and SD of the averaged baseline points were calculated for 10 s (~100 averaged baseline points) at three distinct times of the recordings (for example: periods A, B, and C). Two changes in the baseline current were calculated between the three periods. The first (DBL) was the value of the difference during recording periods A and B, both taken during the control period and reflecting baseline fluctuation. The second (DDrug) was the value of the difference during recording periods C and B, and reflecting drug induced changes to the holding current. The two baseline changes (DBL and DDrug) were then statistically compared (paired t-test). Raw traces were shown to illustrate changes in baseline in control and drug conditions which were made using PowerPoint.

2.6.3.2 Phasic current analysis

The Mini Analysis programme (synaptosoft, USA) was used. Minimum 200 events were taken from the recordings to calculate the amplitude and the inter event interval of the IPSCs. Double events were also scanned and were considered in analysis. The cumulative probability distributions were plotted for sIPSC amplitude and inter event interval (IEI) to compare control and drug conditions using Graph Pad Prism 5 and 7 (GraphPad Software, Inc. USA). Raw traces were shown to illustrate the changes in IPSCs amplitude and IEI in control and drug conditions (after 15 min of drug application) which were made using PowerPoint.

2.6.1 Statistical analysis

For extracellular recordings, pooled data are presented as mean ± SEM. Wilcoxon (non-parametric) signed rank test (ns, not significant, p>0.05; * significant 0.05>p>0.01; ** very significant, 0.01>p>0.001, *** extremely significant) was used to determine statistical significance for one drug (example: PTX). The Friedman test (*p>0.05, **p>0.01, ***p>0.001) was used to detect significant differences for multiple drug applications (example: Zolpidem).

For intracellular recordings, pooled data are presented as mean ± SEM. Significance of changes in tonic currents were determined using paired t-tests and Dunn’s multiple comparisons using Graph Pad prism software and are designated by p values and *.

For Phasic currents, a cumulative probability distribution was plotted for sIPSC amplitude and inter event interval (IEI) during control and drug conditions. The significance between
these two distributions are determined by two sample Kolmogorov-Smirnov test using Graph Pad prism software.

2.6.2 Correlation analysis

Correlation analysis is a measure of linear relationship of variables with correlation coefficient values in between -1 and 1 which was performed in Spike2.

Auto correlation function of a signal is defined with respect to the signal itself. This means that the signal is being compared (for similarity) with a time shift. Mathematically, its function is the average of the sequence x(t) with a time shift of m within itself which measure periodicity of a signal in time domain format. This analysis was used to identify signals at various frequency bands (delta, theta, and gamma) to determine the level of correlation.

Cross correlation function of a signal is correlation of two independent signals with a time shift in one of the two independent signals. This analysis was used to determine temporal relationship between two independent signals x(t) and y (t) to estimate the degree to which two waveforms are correlated which ranges from -1 to +1. +1 indicates positive correlation, -1 indicated negative correlation whilst zero (0) implies no correlation.

2.6.3 Linear regression analysis

Linear regression is the most commonly used predictive analysis. Regression analyses are used to describe data and to explain the relationship between a dependent variable and one or more independent variables. This analysis assembles the data as a single line through a scatter plot. The simplest form with one dependent and one independent variable is defined by the formula y = c + b*x (y = estimated dependent, c = constant, b = regression coefficients, and x = independent variable). Linear regression analysis was performed in Graph Pad Prism software to determine the significance of the elevation or trend (y-intercepts) of two data sets.

2.6.4 Phase amplitude coupling analysis

Phase amplitude coupling (PAC), is a type of cross frequency coupling (CFC). PAC analysis was performed to determine the coupling of phase of low frequency oscillations and amplitude of high frequency oscillations by using a customised MATLAB script ‘CalleRoutine3’ developed by Tort et al., 2010. To measure PAC, the low (theta) and high (gamma) frequency data of 60 s with a sampling rate of 1000 Hz were band pass filtered in the range of 3-15 Hz and 30-45 Hz respectively. To remove any phase distortion, the filters
were applied to the original time series in the forward and then the reverse direction using MATLAB's function ‘filtering.m’. These zero-phase filtered data were then used to conduct PAC studies based on a Hilbert transform. Amplitudes were normalized by subtracting the temporal mean and dividing the result by the temporal standard deviation to create the set of normalized band-passed signals. Normalization was performed to facilitate comparison between different frequency bands (Tort et al., 2010).

The degree of PAC between theta and gamma oscillations were measured by modulation index (MI) in the desired frequency bands: (theta) phase modulating and (gamma) amplitude modulated and was represented by bi-dimensional cross-frequency coupling in frequency domain in which high coupling was represented by hot (red) colours. Several other hotspots observed in some PAC plots could account for harmonic activity or artefacts.
3 Characterisation of pharmacologically induced theta and gamma oscillations in LV of M1 and S1
3.1 Introduction

3.1.1 Oscillations in M1 and S1

The use of *in vitro* electrophysiological techniques has enabled a greater understanding of neuronal activity, primarily through the use of the brain slice preparation (Yamamoto and McIlwain, 1966; Andersen et al., 1972). Over the last 20 years, this preparation has provided insight into the mechanisms underlying oscillations at various frequency ranges. Understanding the electrical and neuropharmacological properties of brain networks using selective receptor modulators in native tissue enables comparison with such properties with those in disease models (e.g. epilepsy and PD). *In vivo* and *in vitro* studies have reported M1 in execution of voluntary movements and, from both local network *in vitro* and whole brain *in vivo* perspectives, M1 has shown to generate oscillatory activity at beta frequency (Murthy and Fetz, 1992; Baker et al., 1997, Jensen et al., 2005; Yamawaki, 2008, Prokic, 2011, 2015). However, MEG studies in human have also revealed nested rhythms at theta and gamma frequencies (Cheyne et al., 2008) like those of rat hippocampus (Bragin et al., 1995) and *in vivo* studies also confirm slow wave oscillations in somatosensory cortex including delta and theta band activity (Steriade, 2006). Whilst gamma oscillations have been reported *in vitro* in somatosensory cortex (Buhl et al., 1998), this has not since been followed up with detailed mechanistic studies. To date, rhythms in other bands, such as delta, theta and alpha frequencies, have not been demonstrated in somatosensory and motor cortices *in vitro* and hence their mechanisms remain unexplored.

Using a modified sagittal plane slice preparation (Prokic et al., 2015; Johnson et al., 2017; Ozkan et al., 2017), with aCSF containing neuro-protectants, we have greatly improved brain slice viability, enabling the generation and study of dual rhythms (theta and gamma oscillations) in the *in vitro* sensorimotor slice in the presence of KA and CCh (Johnson et al., 2017) and enabling production of theta-gamma and delta waves *in vitro* for the first time. Over the next 3 chapters, this thesis describes the physiology and pharmacology of these various rhythms in rat sensorimotor cortex *in vitro*.

3.1.2 Significance of gamma oscillations

Gamma oscillations have been identified to play critical role in cognitive integration in brain (Herrmann et al., 2004). They have found to be involved in attention (Titiinen et al., 1993) sensory and motor functions, learning and memory (Hopfield et al., 1995; Lisman and Idiart, 1995; Buzsaki and Chrobak, 1995; Lisman, 1999) arousal (Struber et al., 2000), language perception, focussed attention, recognition (Bouyer et al., 1981; Sheer et al., 1989; Murthy and Fetz, 1992; Pfurtscheller and Neuper, 1992) and memory formation, processing and retrieval (Buzsaki, 1989; Fell et al., 2001; Kaiser et al., 2003). Besides these role of gamma
oscillations in healthy brain, they have been implicated too in disease conditions such as hyperactivity disorder (Yordanova et al., 2001), Alzheimer’s disease (Stam et al., 2007) and epilepsy (Willoughby et al., 2003), autism (Brock et al., 2002). Gamma oscillations have also been found to be profoundly altered in schizophrenia (Moghaddam et al., 2003; Lewis et al., 2005) and high-frequency gamma oscillations were reported in cortex before and after the onset of epileptic seizures (Allen et al., 1992; Fisher et al., 1992).

3.1.3 Significance of theta oscillations

The occurrence of theta rhythm is mostly associated with REM sleep, locomotor activity (Jouvet, 1969; Vanderwolf, 1969) and learning and memory (Vertes, 1997; Buzsaki, 2002; kowalczyk et al., 2013). It has been suggested that theta oscillations play a major role in synchronising long-range circuits, facilitating transfer of information between distant brain regions (Sirota et al., 2008; Gordon, 2011; Buzsaki and Watson, 2012). Theta oscillations are known to be synchronised with the activity in amygdala, pre frontal cortex, and medial septum during cognitive functions (Seidenbecher et al., 2003; DeCoteau et al., 2007; Adhikari et al., 2010; Benchenane et al., 2010; Hernandez-Perez et al., 2015) and furthermore, gamma oscillations in hippocampus and other cortical regions like M1 are often phase-locked to theta rhythm (Bragain, 1995; Canolty et al., 2006; Sirota et al., 2008; Montgomery et al., 2009; Colgin et al., 2009; Johnson et al., 2017), suggesting functional interactions between theta and gamma rhythms. Hence, theta oscillations contribute to both local network function as well as widely dispersed cortico-cortical, and sub-cortical circuits (Hernandez-Perez et al., 2015). In vitro studies demonstrate that theta can be pharmacologically induced in hippocampus (Kowalczyk et al., 2013) and in cortex (Lukatch and Maclver, 1997) using CCh.

3.1.4 Significance of theta and gamma coupling

Neuronal network oscillations do not function as single-frequency representations of network states, rather, they exist as complex activity patterns that appear to code information in cross-frequency relationship between the phase, amplitude and frequency components of the various waves. For example, evidence exists that phase-amplitude coupling (PAC) contributes to sensory signal detection (Handel and Haarmeier, 2009), and memory processes (Tort et al., 2009; Avmacher et al., 2010), maintenance of working memory (Lisman and Idiart, 1995), sequential memory organisation (Lisman, 2005), attentional selection (Schroeder and Lakatos, 2009). According to theoretical models (Lisman, 2005), PAC has a functional role in cognitive functions (Lakatos et al., 2008; Tort et al., 2008, 2009; Cohen et al., 2009a, b; Avmacher et al., 2010). PAC has been reported in vivo in rodent hippocampus (Bragin et al., 1995; Buzsaki et al., 2003; Hentschke et al., 2007; Tort et al., 2008; Tort et al., 2009; Wulff et al., 2009), rodent basal ganglia (Tort et al.,
2008), macaque neocortex (Lakatos et al., 2005) and in various cortical and sub-cortical regions in humans (Bragin et al., 1995; Buzsáki et al., 2003; Bruns and Eckhorn, 2004; Vanhatalo et al., 2004; Mormann et al., 2005; Canolty et al., 2006; Hentschke et al., 2007; Demiralp et al., 2007; Osipova et al., 2008; Monto et al., 2008; Tort et al., 2008; Penny et al., 2008; Wulff et al., 2009; Tort et al., 2009; Cohen et al., 2009a, 2009b, 2009c; Handel and Heermeier, 2009; He et al., 2010; Axmacher et al., 2010; Sadaghiani et al., 2010; Voytek et al., 2010). A recent study in our own laboratory, (Johnson et al., 2017) has reported PAC in primary motor cortex slices of rats in vitro and this is the first demonstration of PAC in cortex in vitro.

### 3.1.5 M1 and S1 interactions

Both regions (M1 and S1) have similar laminar structure, though some studies suggest absence of LIV in M1 (Donoghue and Wise, 1982; Beaulieu, 1993; Zilles et al., 1995) which makes it unique compared to other cortical regions. However, several studies (Krieg, 1946; von Bonin, 1949; Caviness, 1975; Deschênes et al., 1979; Skoglund et al., 1997; Cho et al., 2004, Kuramoto et al., 2009; Rowell et al., 2010; Mao et al., 2011; Kaneko, 2013; García-Cabezas and Barbas, 2014; Yamawaki et al., 2014) suggest the existence of connection patterns that are similar to that of LIV in other sensory regions. Topographic maps of both M1 and S1 are well established (Brooks et al., 1961, Woolsey 1952, Li and Waters 1991) and interactions between these two regions are known to play critical roles in motor learning and control skills (Asanuma and Arissian, 1984; Asanuma and Pavlides, 1997). Recovery of motor function after a brain injury requires changes in structure and function (Bornschlegl and Asanuma, 1987) and these changes may be mediated by inter-cortical interactions between M1 and S1 (Paperna and Malach, 1991). Changes in motor function due to the projections from S1 have been reported in several species and vice versa. In cats, LTP in M1 is generated by exciting the neurones that project from S1 and thalamus to M1 (Iriki et al., 1989). In humans and rodents, somatosensory entrainment enhances the excitability of M1 (Luft et al., 2002; Kaelin and Lang et al., 2002). Disrupting S1 projections in primates causes disturbances in chewing (Lin et al., 1993, 1998; Hiraba et al., 2000), muscle contraction, motor coordination and ability to carry heavy objects (Rothwell et al., 1982; Johansson and Westling, 1984; Hikosaka et al., 1985; Brochier et al., 1999). It is evident that neurones in S1 fire prior to the onset of actual movement in rhesus macaques (Soso and Fetz, 1980) and also in non-human primates (Nelson, 1987). This phenomenon, in which somatosensory integration plays a critical role in voluntary movements, is termed as efference copy (EC) which was used to distinguish between sensory inputs obtained from internal and external stimuli (Wolpert et al., 1995; Helmholtz, 2011). Physiological properties of individual regions have been well characterised but inter-
cortical connectivity remains less explored despite its clear functional significance. Sensorimotor integration has been studied *in-vivo* (Wannier *et al.*, 1991; Smith *et al.*, 1983) but this does not enable a full understanding of the pathways and local network interactions.

We have recently developed a novel slice preparation method (details in section 3.3) based upon use of numerous neuroprotectants to aid preservation of inhibitory neurons critical for maintenance of rhythmic network activity. Using this modified preparation, dual theta-gamma oscillations could reliably be induced in M1 (Johnson *et al.*, 2017) and S1. We determined to use the same slice preparation to induce theta-gamma activity and to explore rhythms generated in both M1 and S1, with a view to exploring potential interactions between M1 and S1 in the functionally connected sagittal cortical slice.
3.2 Results

3.2.1 Induction of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

M1 and S1 are adjacent to each other and when simultaneous extracellular LFP recordings were performed in deep layers of M1/S1 in the absence of exogenously applied neuronal excitants we found no spontaneous oscillatory activity. Subsequently, KA and CCh were used to induce oscillations both in M1 and S1. Sagittal sensory motor slices were used in these experiments as it was easy to locate M1 and S1 and functional connectivity is well preserved (Woodhall, unpublished observations). Since there seems to be greater oscillatory power in deeper layers (Yamawaki, 2008) than in superficial, recordings were made from LV of both M1 and S1 simultaneously or non-simultaneously from slice type A in this section 3.2 (unless otherwise stated) located using the rat brain atlas of Paxinos and Watson (Paxinos and Watson, 2012).

Co-application of 150 nM of KA and 10 µM CCh reliably induced theta (6-11 Hz) and gamma (30-40 Hz) oscillations in both M1 and S1 (figure 3.1) which were stable for 3-4 hrs. Mean values: theta (M1 7.5 ± 0.2 Hz; S1 7.7 ± 0.3 Hz, n=40) and gamma (M1 33.4 ± 1.2 Hz; S1 33.7 ± 1.8 Hz, n=40). Whilst, most of the recordings have high gamma power but there are some recordings with high theta power (example: Figure 3.10). Therefore, normalised values are used for analysis. Various receptor modulators were bath applied to perform pharmacological studies to determine the mechanisms involved in these oscillations. ‘Control’ (normalised to 100%) in experiments in this chapter indicates stable theta and gamma oscillations where there was no change noticed in frequency and amplitude over 20 min period. The effect of drug was measured after 40 min of bath application (unless otherwise stated) which was compared with control.
Figure 3.1 Theta and gamma oscillations were induced both in M1 and S1 in the presence of KA and CCh.

(Ai) raw data of 60 s LFP recording of theta and gamma oscillations in LV of M1 (scale: 20 μV vs 200 ms) (Bi) in LV of S1 filtered using Bessel IIR filter (scale: 20 μV vs 200 ms). (ii) A typical representative power spectrum of 60 s extracellular recording of M1 and S1 (8 Hz and 32 Hz) and S1 (7 Hz and 33 Hz).
3.2.2 GABA\(\alpha\)R modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

To uncover the dependence of theta and gamma oscillations on inhibitory mechanisms, gabazine (GBZ), a competitive GABA\(\alpha\)R antagonist was applied to the solution perfusing the slices. 250 nM GBZ significantly attenuated the synchronous activity of gamma oscillations but increased the amplitude of theta oscillations both in M1 and S1. In M1, GBZ increased the power of theta oscillations to 146 ± 9% of control (n=8, p<0.01) and significantly decreased the power of gamma oscillations to 38 ± 2% (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.2A). In S1, GBZ increased the power of theta oscillations to 122 ± 4% of control (n=8, p<0.05) and significantly decreased the power of gamma oscillations to 24 ± 3% (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.2B).
Figure 3.2 GABA<sub>A</sub>R receptor block increases theta oscillatory power whilst decreasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.

(A) Effect of gabazine (250 nM) on theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 20 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) gabazine (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).

(B) Effect of gabazine (250 nM) on theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) gabazine (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (*p<0.05, *** p<0.001; n=8).
3.2.3 iGluR modulation of theta and gamma oscillations

3.2.3.1 AMPAR modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

To investigate whether AMPAR are involved in the generation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1, SYM2206 (a specific AMPAR antagonist) was applied to bath. 20 µM of SYM2206 decreased the gamma activity whilst increasing theta activity both in M1 and S1. In M1, SYM2206 increased theta activity to 225 ± 12% of control (n=8, p<0.001) and significantly decreased gamma oscillations to 32 ± 2% of control (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.3A). In S1, theta oscillations were significantly increased to 301 ± 8% of control (n=8, p<0.001) and decreased gamma oscillations to 41 ± 6% (n=8, p<0.01) (figure 3.3B).
Figure 3.3 AMPA receptor block increases theta oscillatory power whilst increasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.

(A) Effect of SYM2206 (20 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) SYM2206 (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).

(B) Effect of SYM2206 (20 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) SYM2206 (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).
3.2.3.2 KA/AMPAR modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

After confirming the significance of AMPAR in generation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 by using SYM2206, CNQX (a KAR/AMPAR antagonist) was used to examine the combined impact of KAR and AMPAR on these oscillations. 25 µM of CNQX decreased the gamma activity whilst increasing theta activity both in M1 and S1. In M1, CNQX increased the power of theta oscillations to 189 ± 14% of control (n=8, p<0.001) and significantly decreased the power of gamma oscillations to 44 ± 4% (n=8, p<0.01) (figure 3.4A). In S1, CNQX increased the power of theta oscillations to 194 ± 16% of control (n=8, p<0.001) and significantly decreased the power of gamma oscillations to 58 ± 3% of control (n=8, p<0.01) (figure 3.4B) suggesting a role of both KA and AMPA receptors. Specific KAR antagonists, UBP 304 and UBP 310 would be beneficial.
Figure 3.4 AMPA/KA receptor block increases theta oscillatory power whilst increasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.

(A) Effect of CNQX (25 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) CNQX (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).

(B) Effect of CNQX (25 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) CNQX (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).
3.2.3.3 NMDAR modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

To investigate the dependence of theta and gamma oscillations on NMDAR mechanisms, 2-AP5, a competitive NMDAR antagonist was applied to bath solution perfusing the slices. 50 µM of 2-AP5 significantly enhanced the synchronous activity of gamma oscillations but had differential effects on amplitude of theta oscillations in M1 and S1. In M1, 2-AP5 had no significant effect on the power of theta oscillations (n=8, p>0.05) but significantly increased the power of gamma oscillations to 174 ± 7% of control (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.5A). In S1, 2-AP5 decreased the power of theta oscillations to 80 ± 3% of control (n=8, p<0.05) and significantly increased the power of gamma oscillations to 180 ± 8% (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.5B). Although the power spectrum in the figure (Aiii) shows a decrease in peak frequency it is not significant when data were pooled.
Ai control
+2-AP5 (50 μM)

Bi control
+2-AP5 (50 μM)

iii control
+2-AP5 (50 μM)

power (μV²)
frequency (Hz)

iii

control
2-AP5 (50 μM)

power (μV²)
frequency (Hz)

iv theta
2-AP5 (50 μM)

 normalized power (%)

iv

theta
2-AP5 (50 μM)

 normalized power (%)
Figure 3.5 NMDA receptor block has differential effects on theta oscillatory power whilst increasing gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.

(A) Effect of -2-AP5 (50 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) 2-AP5 (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).

(B) Effect of -2-AP5 (50 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 20 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) 2-AP5 (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (*p<0.05, *** p<0.001; n=8).
3.2.4 Dopamine modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

3.2.4.1 DAR modulation of theta and gamma oscillations

DA was bath applied along with 250 µM ascorbic acid to prevent DA oxidation (Hastings et al., 1996) to determine the effect of DAR in generation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1. 30 µM DA enhanced the synchronous oscillatory activity of theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1. In M1 DA increased theta to 120 ± 2% of control (n=8, p<0.01) and gamma to 148 ± 4 % of control (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.6A). In S1, DA significantly increased the theta activity to 153 ± 5% of control (n=8, p<0.01) and gamma oscillation to 160 ± 6 % of control (n=8, p<0.01) (figure 3.6B) suggesting a role in these oscillations.
Figure 3.6 Dopamine increases both theta and gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1.

(A) Effect of DA (30 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) DA (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01, *** p<0.001; n=8).

(B) Effect of DA (30 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) DA (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (**p<0.01; n=8).
3.2.4.2 AMPH modulation of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1

It may be argued that application of micromolar concentrations of dopamine is not physiological, and we decided to investigate the effect of endogenously released DA. To this end, we applied amphetamine sulphate, which is known to release DA from vesicles by direct displacement, as well as to block DA transport across the neuronal membrane. 20 μM of AMPH was bath applied. AMPH in M1 enhanced the synchronous oscillatory activity of theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1. In M1, AMPH had significantly increased theta to 171 ± 11% of control (n=8, p<0.001) and gamma to 213 ± 5 % of control (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.7A). In S1, AMPH significantly increased the theta activity to 196 ± 8% of control (n=8, p<0.001) and gamma oscillation to 164 ± 15 % of control (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 3.7B).
Figure 3.7 AMPH increases both theta and gamma oscillatory power in M1 and S1 via DA release.

(A) Effect of AMPH (20 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 20 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) AMPH (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (*** p<0.001; n=8).

(B) Effect of AMPH (20 μM) on theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (i) raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application of theta (top) and gamma (bottom) (scale: 10 μV vs 200 ms) (iii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after (red) AMPH (iv) Bar graphs showing pooled peak oscillatory power of theta (grey bars) and gamma (red bars) oscillations normalised to control (***p<0.001; n=8).
3.2.5 Summary of results

The pharmacology of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 is summarised in the table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug (concentration)</th>
<th>Region</th>
<th>% Change in Control</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gabazine (250 nM)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>146 ± 9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>,</strong>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[GABAR antagonist]</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>122 ± 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td><em>,</em>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYM2206 (20 µM)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>225 ± 12</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*<strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[AMPA antagonist]</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>301 ± 8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*<strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNQX (25 µM)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>189 ± 14</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*<strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[KAR+AMPA antagonist]</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>194 ± 16</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*<strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-AP5 (50 µM)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>ns</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns, ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[NMDAR antagonist]</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>80 ± 3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td><em>,</em>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dopamine (30 µM)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>120 ± 2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S1</td>
<td>153 ± 5</td>
<td>160 ± 6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td><strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AMPH (20 µM)</td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>171 ± 11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*<strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[endogenous DA release]</td>
<td>S1</td>
<td>196 ± 8</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*<strong>,</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3.1 Pharmacology of theta and gamma oscillations in LV of M1 and S1

Peak power changes after application of various receptor modulators is represented as mean ± SEM when compared to control (normalised to 100%). N= number of recordings (obtained from 3 different animals), significance: ns, p>0.05, * p<0.05, ** p<0.01, *** p<0.001.
3.3 Correlation and Phase-amplitude coupling studies

As noted above, oscillations at different frequencies coexist and interact with each other in *in vivo* networks. The ability to investigate such interaction in the *in vitro* slice preparation would, therefore, be invaluable in answering mechanistic questions about cross-frequency interactions. To this end, correlation analysis was performed to determine the relation between theta and gamma activity in M1 and S1 *in vitro*, to examine intra and inter regional interactions across and between different frequency bands. Auto-correlation analysis was conducted for theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 to determine the frequency of oscillations. To explore the potential for cross-frequency interactions, cross-correlation analysis was performed between theta in M1 and theta in S1, between gamma in M1 and gamma in S1 and between theta and gamma oscillations. Analysis of phase-amplitude coupling (PAC) was performed between theta and gamma oscillations, with theta frequency (3–12 Hz) as phase and gamma frequency (25-50 Hz) as amplitude that was driven by low frequency using a script developed by Tort *et al.*, 2010. PAC was performed on 60 s epochs of data in various slice types (refer methods section) and was represented as Modulation Index (MI) which indicates the degree of coupling that existed between two oscillations. As shown above, results obtained from autocorrelation, as expected, revealed the frequency of low frequency in theta range and high frequency in gamma range explaining internal positive correlation between each frequency range in a time series. Cross correlation analysis showed that theta and gamma oscillatory activity was phase delayed by 5.5 ± 1 ms and 1 ± 0.3 ms respectively to that of in S1. Average MI of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 was found to be 1.6 x 10^-4 ± 0.8 x 10^-4 (n=5) whilst in S1 it is 1.1 x 10^-4 ± 0.5 x 10^-4 (n=5). MI in M1 was higher than of S1 in this intact slice preparation (figure 3.8). However, there is no correlation within theta or gamma oscillations between M1 and S1 in slice type B (figure 3.10) in which there was a cut made between two regions. Average MI of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 was found to be 2.4 x 10^-4 ± 1.4 X 10^-4 z (n=5) whilst in S1 it was 2.1 x 10^-4 ± 1.3 x 10^-4 (n=5). MI was found to be slightly higher in M1 than in S1 (figure 3.11).

Phase lag that was noticed in M1 with reference to S1 in intact slice suggests that theta and gamma oscillations originated in S1 (figure 3.8 G, H), however, further investigations revealed that when M1 was isolated from S1, both regions produced theta and gamma oscillations suggesting the existence of independent local rhythm generators (figures 3.12, 3.14). In slice type C, the average MI of theta and gamma oscillations was found to be 4.2 x 10^-4 ± 1 x 10^-4 (n=5) (figure 3.13). In slice type D, average MI of theta and gamma oscillations was found to be 3.6 x 10^-4 ± 0.9 x 10^-4 (n=5) (figure 3.15). Overall, high coupling was found in slice types C and D in which M1 and S1 are isolated along with adjacent regions.
3.3.1 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type A

Figure 3.8 Theta and gamma oscillations are phase delayed in M1 when compared to S1 in slice type A.

(A) Representative power spectrum of theta and gamma oscillations of 60 s extracellular recording from LV of M1 and (B) of S1 (C) auto-correlation analysis of theta oscillation in M1 and (D) in S1 (E) auto-correlation analysis of gamma oscillations in M1 and (F) in S1. (G) cross-correlation analysis of theta oscillations between S1/S1 (black) and M1/S1 (red) (H) cross-correlation analysis of gamma oscillations between S1/S1 (black and M1/S1 (red).
Figure 3.9 Phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1 in slice type A

(Ai) pooled phase amplitude coupling (PAC) graph of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (Bi) of S1 (Aii), (Bii) representative comodulogram showing the cross frequency coupling in frequency domain, areas of high modulation are in red in M1 (MI=4.08x10^-4) and S1 (MI=1.3x10^-4) respectively.
3.3.2 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type B

Figure 3.10 No correlation exists between theta and gamma oscillations between M1 and S1 in slice type B.

(A) Representative power spectrum of theta and gamma oscillations of 60 s extracellular recording from LV of M1 and (B) of S1 (C) auto-correlation analysis of theta oscillation in M1 and (E) in S1 (D) auto-correlation analysis of gamma oscillations in M1 and (F) in S1. (G) cross-correlation analysis of theta oscillations in M1 and S1 (H) cross-correlation analysis of gamma oscillations in M1 and S1.
Figure 3.11 Local phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1 in slice type B

(Ai) pooled phase amplitude coupling (PAC) graph of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (Bi) of S1 (Aii), (Bii) representative comodulogram showing the cross frequency coupling in frequency domain, areas of high modulation are in red in M1 (MI=6.06x10^-4) and S1 (MI=1.4x10^-4) respectively.
3.3.3 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type C

Figure 3.12 No correlation exists between theta and gamma oscillations in (M1) slice type C

(A) Representative power spectrum of theta and gamma oscillations of 60 s extracellular recording from LV of M1 (B) cross-correlation analysis of theta and gamma oscillations. (C) auto-correlation analysis of theta oscillation in M1 (D) auto-correlation analysis of gamma oscillations in M1.

Figure 3.13 Local phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations in M1 slice type C

(A) pooled phase amplitude coupling (PAC) graph of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 (B) representative comodulogram showing the cross-frequency coupling in frequency domain, areas of high modulation are in red (MI=3.19x10^{-4}).
3.3.4 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type D

Figure 3.14 No correlation exists between theta and gamma oscillations in (S1) slice type D

(A) Representative power spectrum of theta and gamma oscillations of 60 s extracellular recording from LV of S1 (B) cross-correlation analysis of theta and gamma oscillations. (C) auto-correlation analysis of theta oscillation in S1 (D) auto-correlation analysis of gamma oscillations in S1.

Figure 3.15 Local phase amplitude coupling exists between theta and gamma oscillations in S1 slice type D

(A) pooled phase amplitude coupling (PAC) graph of theta and gamma oscillations in S1 (B) representative comodulogram showing the cross-frequency coupling in frequency domain, areas of high modulation are in red (MI=1.62x10⁻⁴).
3.3.5 Correlation and PAC studies of theta and gamma oscillations in slice type E

In this type of micro slice where only M1 and S1 were isolated from rest of the regions, there was no activity noticed in the presence of KA (150 nM) and CCh (10 µM). Application of double concentrations of KA and CCh also did not induce any oscillatory activity, probably because of many cuts that were made in slice preparation as well as suggesting local networks are essential for neuronal activity within M1 or/and S1 (data not shown).

3.3.6 Comparison of modulation index in various slice types

Bar graph below represents MI in various slice types. Note the significant differences between M1 in intact slice (A) and M1 only slice (C) (**, p<0.01, n=5), S1 in intact (A) and S1 only slice (D) (**, p<0.01, n=5), S1 in intact (A) and M1 only slice (C) (***, p<0.001, n=5), S1 in cut slice (B) and M1 only slice (C) (*, p<0.05, n=5).

Taken together (table below), high percentage (74%) of coupling was observed in slice type C, then in slice type D (66%) followed by slice type B (41%) and A (36%). This could probably mean the biological differences in each slice obtained daily however needs further investigations of the mechanisms behind the coupling.

![Bar chart representing modulation index (MI) in various slice types.](image-url)

Figure 3.16 Bar chart representing modulation index (MI) in various slice types.
MI (Mean+SEM) of theta and gamma oscillations coupling in M1 and S1 in slice types A, B, C and D.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Slice preparation type</th>
<th>Modulation Index (MI) x 10^4 mean+SEM (n=5)</th>
<th>% of slices showing coupling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>M1</td>
<td>S1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) Intact M1&amp;S1</td>
<td>1.6 ± 0.8</td>
<td>1.1 ± 0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) Cut M1/S1</td>
<td>2.4 ± 1.4</td>
<td>2.1 ± 1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) only M1</td>
<td>4.2 ± 1</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D) only S1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3.6 ± 0.9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3.2 Mean modulation index of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 and the percentage of coupling in various slice types.
3.3 Discussion

Initial investigations in the lab (Yamawaki, 2008) using coronal sensorimotor slices that are obtained from decapitated animals using standard storage glucose-based aCSF and the cutting aCSF was sucrose-based (Aghajanian and Rasmussen, 1989). aCSF in these studies contained neuro-protectants such as indomethacin (cyclooxygenase inhibitor, 450 µM) (Pakhotin et al., 1997). There was no spontaneous activity in these slices, however, bath application of KA (400 nM) and CCh (50 µM) (as used by Buhl et al., 1998) induced beta oscillations with a mean frequency of 27.8 ± 1.1 Hz which was in consistent with previous in vivo studies (Murthy and Fetz, 1992; Baker et al., 1997; Jensen et al., 2005). Beta oscillations in M1 were reported to originate in layer V and were dependent on GABAR, NMDAR, M1R as well as gap junctions (Yamawaki, 2008). It was only in subsequent years it was identified that the slices were less viable and only a very low percentage of slices showed oscillatory activity (Prokic, 2011), possibly due to the damage that occurred during preparation of slices. Numerous studies have explored this issue and it was indicated that addition of neuro-modulators to standard sucrose-based aCSF solutions would enable increased viability of slices (Hajos and Mody, 2006). Ascorbic acid is known to be abundant in cerebral cortex (up to 500 µM) (Rice, 2000) which was found to be depleted during slice preparation. Hence, addition of 1 mM Ascorbate was used to compensate any loss. Taurine has been identified to play a role in cell viability (Boldyrev et al., 1999), mitochondrial function (Palmi et al., 1999) and intracellular calcium levels (Wu and Prentice, 2010) and NAC has been suggested to revive the functioning of mitochondria during brain injury (Xiong, Peterson and Lee 1999). Therefore, we (Prokic et al., 2011) decided to modify the standard aCSF (see methods chapter for full composition of modified aCSF) by adding ascorbate (1 mM), taurine (1 mM) and NAC (2 mM). Also, indomethacin (22.5 µM), uric acid (400 µM) and ascorbic acid (300 µM) and aminoguanidine (200 µM) were added to modified aCSF as neuro-protectants (Griffiths et al., 1993; Rice et al., 1994; Pakhotin et al., 1997). Storage aCSF also contained indomethacin (22.5 µM) and uric acid (400 µM). Slices were stored on a storage chamber before recording to enable the above-mentioned neuro-protectants to be washed off. Also, several studies in the past have suggested that slices required an hour of recovery period due to the structural damage that occurred during slicing (Hajos et al., 1989; Kirov et al., 1999). Recordings made from slices immediately after slicing did not enable the generation of oscillatory activity even in the presence of KA and CCh confirming the need for recovery period before recording.

Pietersen et al., has showed that trans-cardial perfusion using sucrose-based aCSF has increased the generation of spontaneous gamma oscillations in hippocampus (Pietersen et al., 2009). These modifications and additions to aCSF along with trans-cardial perfusion has enabled a better cell viability and improved oscillatory activity to greater extent (about
60%) (Prokic, 2011) when compared to original work in the lab (Yamawaki, 2008). Recordings made from these slices revealed no spontaneous activity. However, an increase in frequency to 29.9 ± 1.0 Hz in coronal plane whilst, 32.66 ± 0.89 Hz in sagittal plane in the presence of KA (100-150 nM) and CCh (5-10 µM) was observed since high concentration used previously (400 nM) and CCh (50 µM) (Buhl et al., 1998; Yamawaki, 2008) induced seizure like activity. This reduced requirement of KA and CCh could be accounted for by the modified solutions as well as sagittal plane slicing which aided in better preservation of network connections (Prokic, 2011; Johnson, 2016).

3.3.1 KA and CCh induced oscillations in M1 and S1

KA has been shown to induce oscillatory activity in sensory cortex (Roopun et al., 2006), hippocampus (Fishan et al., 1998; Modebadze, 2014) and entorhinal cortex (Cunningham et al., 2003). Wang and Buzsaki have reported that increasing excitatory drive by application of KA or CCh induced high power and high frequency gamma oscillations when compared to spontaneous gamma in hippocampus (Wang and Buzsaki, 1996). KA alone failed to induce oscillations in mouse somatosensory cortex (Buhl et al., 1998). However, co-application of muscarinic receptor agonist in micro-molar concentration has enabled oscillatory activity at gamma frequency (Buhl et al., 1998). Various concentrations of CCh (4-60 µM) has enabled the generation of delta, theta and gamma oscillations (Fellous and Sejnowski, 2000; Tiesinga et al., 2001). Currently, nested rhythms have become of more interest in electrophysiology and may have a role in memory processing, sensory information and coding (Lisman and Jensen, 2013). Theta and gamma oscillations were observed previously in hippocampus (Soltesz and Deschenes, 1993; Bragin et al., 1995; Colgin et al., 2009; Belluscio et al., 2012). Co-application of KA and CCh was found to be essential to generate oscillatory activity in M1 (Yamawaki, 2008, Prokic, 2011, Johnson, 2017).

Co-application of KA and CCh reliably induced theta and gamma oscillations in both M1 and S1 and which were stable for 3-4 hrs in line with other in vitro studies (Dickinson et al., 2003). Beta was initially defined as 25-35 Hz (Murthy and Fetz, 1992) but was redefined as 20-40 Hz (Murthy and Fetz, 1996 a, b), then as 20-30 Hz (Baker et al., 1999) and the others defined as 15 Hz (Traub et al., 1996). It was then considered as low (15-20 Hz) and high beta (20-30 Hz). These frequencies overlap with gamma which is either 25 Hz above or 35 Hz and above (Whittington et al., 1995). The classification of frequency ranges has always been in conflict between several studies. Nevertheless, theta was defined as 6-10 Hz and gamma as 30-40 Hz in this study.
3.3.2 Role of KA and CCh in oscillatory activity

KA enables neuronal excitation and synaptic transmission (Contractor et al., 2011). It was established that KA acts via direct pre-synaptic effect (Cossart et al., 2001) as it enhances AP-independent miniature (m) IPSC frequency (Cossart et al., 1998; Frerking et al., 1998). Moreover, KA was known to activate KAR by resulting in enhancing the excitability of neurons. Furthermore, nanomolar concentrations of KA have been identified to increase both sEPSPs and mEPSPs recorded from pyramidal cells (Campbell et al., 2007) by postsynaptic depolarisation of excitatory synapses. Nevertheless, in vivo studies in rats revealed that low concentrations of KA cause a reduction in GABA mediated inhibition (Lerma, 1997) and KA when used in higher concentration can induce seizures (Smolders et al., 2002).

CCh was co-applied along with KA to induce oscillatory activity in M1 and S1. CCh activates muscarinic mACh receptors. These receptors are known to be post synaptically expressed and are G-protein coupled (Muller and Misgeld, 1986). This receptor depolarises by regulating various K+ channels which include leak K+ current (I_{K-leak}), Ca2+ dependent K+ current (I_{AHP}), rectifying outward current (I_{M}) (Lucas-Meunier et al., 2003). Moreover, mAChR modulates I_h currents which are known to play a critical role in oscillatory activity (Traub et al., 2000; Fishan et al., 2002). Furthermore, CCh acts by increasing glutamate release first in interneurons by fast hyperpolarisation and then in pyramidal cells via slow depolarisation (McCormick and Prince, 1986; Lucas-Meunier et al., 2003). Pirenzepine, a mAChR antagonist, was found to abolish CCh induced gamma oscillations (Fishan et al., 1998; Fishan et al., 2002).

3.3.3 GABA\_A R modulation

GABA\_A receptors are ligand gated ion channels. These receptors act by increasing the membrane permeability of anions (Cl\^- and HCO\_3^- ions) which hyperpolarises the membrane resulting in inhibition (Rivera et al., 1999). Theta oscillations and gamma oscillations have suggested to be dependent on GABAR in several studies (Gokebiewski et al., 1996; Konopacki et al., 1997; Buhl et al., 1998; Fisahn et al., 1998; Cunningham et al., 2003; Cardin et al., 2009) Theta oscillations were increased upon application of gabazine. The increase in power of theta oscillations could attributed to disinhibition (inhibiting the inhibitory inputs) generated by theta-off neurons in cortex (Lukatch and Maclver, 1997). Gamma oscillations were abolished upon the application of GABAR antagonists in line with previous studies in hippocampus, CA3 and cortex (Fisahn et al., 1998; Fisahn et al., 2004; Palhalmi et al., 2004; Cunningham et al., 2003; Pietersen et al., 2009). Frequency of gamma oscillations were known to be dependent on decay time constant of GABA\_A R mediated IPSCs (Traub
et al., 1996). Pentobarbital has shown a decrease in hippocampal gamma frequency owing to prolonged IPSC decay kinetics (Segal and Barker, 1984; Modebadze, 2014). Moreover, fast spiking interneurons are known to be essential for gamma oscillations in cortex (Cardin et al., 2009). However, it was not possible to investigate interactions between pyramidal neurons and adjacent interneurons due to experimental limitations in the current study. Dependence of theta and gamma oscillations on GABA\(_{\alpha}\)R implies the requirement of inhibitory currents in M1 and S1 like in hippocampal brain regions (Whittington et al., 1995; Fishan et al., 1998; Modebadze, 2014). It is however assumed from the above results that gamma oscillations may originate from synaptic mechanisms whilst theta oscillations reflect non-synaptic mechanisms since the power of theta increased upon application of GABA\(_{\alpha}\)R antagonist unlike gamma oscillations (decreased in power). A colleague in the lab has recently reported that high concentration (2.5 µM) of GBZ has shown a similar effect as low concentration (Johnson et al., 2017) implying the blockade of synaptically driven oscillations enhances the non-synaptically driven oscillation (Roopun et al., 2006).

### 3.3.4 Glutamate modulation

Excitatory currents have been identified to contribute to network oscillatory activity in M1 including delta, theta, gamma and beta oscillations (Yamawaki, 2008; Prokic, 2011; Johnson, 2016, Carrecedo et al., 2013), somatosensory cortex of mouse (Buhl et al., 1998) and in hippocampus (Fisahn et al., 1998; Modebadze, 2014).

SYM2206, an AMPAR antagonist (Pelletier et al., 1996) abolished gamma oscillations, whilst increasing theta oscillations in M1 and S1. When CNQX, a KAR/AMPAR antagonist was bath applied, similar effects to that of SYM2206 were observed. Requirement of KAR and AMPAR mediated excitation for the generation of gamma oscillations has been previously reported in various studies in hippocampus (Whittington et al., 2000; Cunningham et al., 2003; Pietersen et al., 2009). Gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 represent PING-like oscillations based on their reliance on phasic excitatory transmission (Whittington et al., 2000) and are not comparable to beta oscillations in M1 which were insensitive to AMPAR block (Yamawaki, 2008). Gamma oscillations have been shown to be altered upon the reduction of AMPAR mediated EPSPs in GluA3 and A4 subunits (expressed on PV+ interneurons) KO experiments suggesting a role of specific sub-unit expression on interneurons in oscillatory activity (Fuchs et al., 2007). Increases in the power of theta oscillations is in consistent with a study performed in the conditions of decreased AMPAR activity in hippocampus (Gillies et al., 2002) and it was suggested that a subset of interneurons have set this theta frequency. This could mean the existence of neuronal population with similar intrinsic properties to that of in hippocampus that are being recruited in the conditions suppressing AMPA currents. Further investigations of neuronal populations in M1 and S1 using optogenetic or labelling studies would be beneficial.
It was previously reported that NMDAR blockade induced an increase of beta frequency oscillatory power in M1 (Yamawaki, 2008). We found the NMDAR antagonist, 2-AP5, increased gamma oscillations in M1 and S1 whilst decreasing theta power in S1, but no effect on theta oscillations in M1. NMDAR have shown differential effect on gamma oscillations in various studies. For instance, no significant change was identified in KA induced gamma oscillations (Fishan et al., 2004). In contrast, spontaneous gamma oscillations were decreased, and KA induced activity was increased in the presence of NMDAR antagonist, AP-5 (Pietersen et al., 2009). CCh induced gamma oscillations have been reported to be enhanced upon NMDAR suppression (Modebadze, 2014) in hippocampal slices. Similar results were identified with NMDAR modulators at delta frequency in M1 and S1 as well (see chapter 4 and 5). GluN1 subunit played a significant role in neuronal activity as knocking out this specific subunit has increased firing rate of pyramidal neurons and decreased synchrony in cortex (Belforte et al., 2010). It was also evident that, increase in theta oscillations, decrease in the gamma oscillations and altered theta and gamma coupling have been identified in PV+ interneurons using GluN1 KO mice experiments (Korotkova et al., 2010) suggesting NMDAR that is localised on GABAergic interneurons drive them to spike at gamma frequency (Borgers and Kopell, 2003). Increase in theta power in S1 could mean that there are more cells available to entrain at theta frequency and no change in M1 could be attributed to the region-specific organisation suggesting a need for various subunit expression investigations using KO studies. However, theta oscillations were found to be increased when non-competitive antagonists MK-801 and ketamine were bath applied by a colleague in lab (Johnson et al., 2017) which contrasts with an in vivo study in hippocampus has shown a reduction of theta oscillations using ketamine (Sabolek et al., 2009) in accordance with Gillies et al., (2002) suggesting a need for further studies using various receptor modulators.

3.3.5 DA and AMPH modulation

D1-like receptors have identified to be abundantly expressed on pyramidal neurons in deep layers of M1 (Vitrac et al., 2014) with D1R located on soma and D5R on apical dendrites (Awenowicz and Porter, 2002). However, Both D1 and D2 like receptors are known to be localised on PV+ interneurons that are present in deep layers (Le Moine and Gasper, 1995). DA plays a critical role in network activity in M1 (Alexander et al., 1986). Exaggerated beta oscillations (12-30 Hz) have been reported in DA depleted conditions associated with PD (Bevan et al., 2002). DA is known to oxidise which was noticed by colour change. Hence, Ascorbic acid was added to prevent this. Ascorbic acid on it own at the concentrations used in our study did not affect oscillations. Ozkan et al., (2017) demonstrated that “bath application of DA resulted in a decrease in gamma power with no change in theta power.
However, application of either the D1-like receptor agonist SKF38393 or the D2-like agonist quinpirole increased the power of both theta and gamma suggesting that the DA-mediated inhibition of oscillatory power is by action at other sites other than classical DA receptors. In the current study, when DA was bath applied, it increased the power of both theta and gamma in M1 and S1 respectively. There could be several possible mechanisms as to why DA enabled the excitation as following: in vivo studies have revealed that administration of DA in to M1 of awake rat enhanced excitability (Storozhuk et al., 2004) in accordance with previous work in LV of primate M1 in which DA increased the spontaneous activity of the neurons (Sawaguchi et al., 1986). Activation of D1 receptors on pyramidal neurons or D2 receptors in interneurons (by inhibiting the inhibitory drive) could be the basis for excitation. Similarly, there is evidence that D2 antagonists, but not D1 receptor antagonists decreased the excitability of pyramidal neurons in motor cortex of rats (Hosp et al., 2009). Also, α-adrenergic receptors have shown to contribute to DA mediated responses (Yang et al., 2014). Moreover, D1R, via PKA cascades has reported to directly influence the function and trafficking of iGluRs. For instance, PKA increases the surface expression of NMDA and AMPA receptors (Snyder et al., 2000; Hallett et al., 2006) trafficking could be a result of direct interaction between D1 and NMDAR (Lee et al., 2002; Scott et al., 2006). Furthermore, it was evident from recent years that DA directly modulates GABA\(\alpha\)R (Hoerbelt et al., 2015) which could form the grounds for increase in power of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1. The mechanism involved here could be disinhibition in which increase in GABA would increase inhibiton on inhibitory interneurons which is enhancing the power through consequent increased excitation of principal cells. Given the ubiquity of GABA\(\alpha\)Rs, it might be beneficial to perform investigations using selective and specific drugs that target DA-GABA mechanisms. Amphetamine sulphate, a potent CNS stimulant, when bath applied has shown a significant increase in power of theta and gamma oscillations to in M1 and S1 similar to that was observed upon DA application. AMPH enhances DA levels by inhibiting DA uptake via (dopamine transporter) DAT, facilitates the release of DA from vesicles to cytoplasm and by enabling the DAT mediated reverse transit from cytoplasm to extracellular space (synaptic cleft) independent of action potential mediated vesicular release (Richfield et al., 1989; Fleckenstein et al., 2007) which was termed as DA efflux enabling increased locomotion (German et al., 2015; Kopra et al., 2017) in line with a study suggesting extracellular dopamine levels have indicated to be higher after AMPH administration in rats (O’Leary et al., 2016.). This may explain DA mediated effects of AMPH. Auto-radiographic investigations have shown that deep layers (LV and LVI) of motor areas (M1 and S1/2) have been identified to be innervated by dopamine (Descarries et al., 1987; Berger et al., 1988) which may suggest a robust disruption of M1 and S1 interactions in PD pathophysiology caused due to DA depletion suggesting a requirement for further research.
3.3.6 Possible mechanism of theta and gamma oscillations in M1 and S1.

Co-application of KA and CCh at very low concentrations (150 nM and 10 µM CCh) compared to earlier studies (Buhl et al., 1996, Yamawaki, 2008) reliably induced theta and gamma oscillations both in M1 and S1. Basic pharmacology performed using various receptor modulators has revealed the contribution of GABA_\text{A}R, NMDAR, AMPAR as well as DAR. Gamma oscillations were decreased by GABA_\text{A}R antagonists (gabazine and picrotoxin) and also by AMAPAR antagonist (SYM2206), whilst increasing theta power in these cases. GABA_\text{B}R antagonist (CGP55845), GABA positive modulators such as diazepam, zolpidem, NMDAR antagonist (MK 801) and mGluR antagonists have shown an increase in both oscillations (Johnson et al., 2017). Theta and gamma oscillations were found to be reliant on gap junctions as the activity was abolished when carbenoxolone, a gap junction blocker was bath applied (Johnson et al., 2017) which in consistent with beta oscillations in M1 (Yamawaki et al., 2008) and delta oscillations (chapter 4). Dependence of oscillatory activity of mAChR in M1 reflects the incidence of oscillatory activity using CCh (Johnson et al., 2017) along with KA and was proved by bath application of mAChR antagonist. Atropine abolished both theta and gamma oscillations (Johnson et al., 2017) in consistent with various studies (Konopacki et al., 1987; Lukatch and Maclver, 1997; Buhl et al., 1998; Fisahn et al., 1998).

3.4 M1 and S1 interactions in various types of slice preparations

3.4.1 Correlation studies

It is evident that the relation between sensory inputs and movements is facilitated by interactions within primary motor and primary sensory cortices. Exploration of environment by whisker movements and this feedback from sensory inputs aids further movements as seen in rodents (Nguyen and Kleinfeld, 2005) as well as in primates (Murthy and Fetz, 1996) suggesting a critical role of sensory motor circuits in integration and synchronising activity. Sensorimotor areas also show an association with several other regions like cerebellum (Popa et al., 2013), cerebral cortex, spinal cord and basal ganglia in order to aid voluntary movements (Wichmann and DeLong, 1999). Anatomical studies have reported that M1 receives sensory input from S1 and thalamus (Zin-Ka-Leu and Arnault, 1998; Miyachi et al., 2005). The reciprocal connections between M1 and S1 have been known to be well preserved by optimum plane sensorimotor slice preparation developed by Rocco et al., (2007). Auto correlation studies revealed the frequencies of the above described dual rhythm to be in theta and gamma range. Theta in between two regions have shown a
significant correlation and so did gamma between M1 and S1. However, both theta and gamma frequencies have revealed a significant phase delay in M1 to that of S1 suggesting S1 to be the possible origin of oscillatory activity of this dual rhythm (theta and gamma). This is in accordance with several electrophysiological investigations which suggested that neuronal network activity of M1 was regulated by S1 (Kosar et al., 1985; Zarzecki et al., 1989; Kaneko et al., 1994; Farkas et al., 1999; Kelly et al., 2001). Interestingly, cross-correlation studies performed in M1 and S1 at beta frequency (Prokic, 2011) has revealed near synchrony since there were no significant phase differences. However, there was a delay in desynchronising oscillatory activity in M1 suggesting that activity in S1 preceded that of M1 based on the fact that sensory information is being transferred to M1 from S1 (Ferezou et al., 2007) and that the connections from S1 to M1 dominate (Izreali and Porter, 1995; Welker et al., 1998). It was found that oscillatory activity in S1 was first abolished followed by M1 when zolpidem was bath applied reflecting the dominant projections from S1 to M1 and could also mean that S1 sets the rhythm and M1 follows (Prokic, 2011).

Interestingly, in slice type B, there was absolutely no correlation between M1 and S1 suggesting the loss of crucial connections between M1 and S1 with the cut made in this type of slice between two regions based on the fact that there are direct connections between the two regions in rodents and cats (Asunama et al., 1981; Donoghue and Parham, 1983; Porter and Sakamoto, 1988; Izreali and Porter, 1995). Although there were intra and inter-cortical connections between M1 and S1, those between LVa of S1 to L2/3 and LVa of M1 and reciprocal connections to S1 from LVa and LVb are probably the two most important connections (Mao et al., 2011) and the cut that was made was is assumed to have disrupted these connections. It was suggested that onset of movements have occurred upon S1 stimulation, both in healthy and pathological states (Johansson et al., 1993; Hamdy et al., 1998; Kaelin-Lang et al., 2002) as well as prevention of sensory inputs using local anaesthesia has disrupted motor control (Edin and Johansson, 1995) and complex motor skills (Sakamoto, 1989). Also, activity in M1 was eliminated upon the inactivation of S1 (Anderson, 1995) suggesting that connections between M1 and S1 has functional significance. In isolated slice types C (M1 only) and D (S1 only), dual oscillations (theta and gamma) have been induced using KA and CCh suggesting the ability of individual regions to generate oscillatory activity independent of each other. The local networks seem to be sufficient for this dual rhythm generation. However, these slices were intact with neighbouring regions and to investigate the role of regions surrounding both M1 and S1, slice type E was used. This slice is a segregated micro slice of just M1 and S1 isolated from every possible surrounding region, which did not enable any oscillatory activity probably due to several cuts made to obtain this slice or the involvement of sub cortical connections in generating oscillatory activity, which may need further exploration.
3.4.2 Phase-amplitude coupling (PAC) studies

Interactions between two different types of oscillations is defined as cross-frequency coupling (CFC) and has been identified in EEG, ECog and LFP recordings (Bragin et al., 1995; Lakatos et al., 2005; Canolty et al., 2006; Demiralp et al., 2007; Jensen and Colgin, 2007; Cohen, 2008; Kramer et al., 2008; Young and Eggermont, 2009). Phase amplitude coupling between theta and gamma oscillations, where the phase of low frequency (theta) oscillations modulates the amplitude of high frequency (gamma) oscillations has been of a particular interest in recent years (Bragin et al., 1995; Canolty et al., 2006; Demiralp et al., 2007; Hentschke et al., 2007; Jensen and Colgin, 2007; Kramer et al., 2008; Cohen, 2008; Cohen et al., 2009a,b; Handel and Haarmeier, 2009; Lakatos et al., 2005, 2008; Schroeder and Lakatos, 2009; Tort et al., 2008, 2009; Wulff et al., 2009; Young and Eggermont, 2009; Axmacher et al., 2010; McGinn and Valiante, 2014; Lega et al., 2016; Sotero, 2016; Chehelcheraghi et al., 2017; Johnson et al., 2017).

In the current study, PAC was performed between theta and gamma oscillations, with theta frequency (3 –14 Hz) as phase and gamma frequency (25-50 Hz) as amplitude that was driven by low frequency using a MATLAB script developed by Tort et al., 2010. PAC was performed on 60 s epochs of data in various slice types (refer methods section) and was represented as Modulation Index (MI) which indicates the degree of coupling that existed between two oscillations. It was interesting to note that not every slice has shown a coupling and the percentage of slices that exhibited coupling varied according to slice type. High MI was found in slice types C and D in which M1 and S1 are isolated along with adjacent regions. Low MI was observed intact slice (type A) than in cut slice (type B) suggesting that there are connections between two regions in intact slices that are involved in suppression of PAC. Although the MI equation was first applied (to our knowledge) to neuroscience studies in 1998 (Tass et al., 1998), it was not until 2008 that it was applied to phase-amplitude coupling analysis (Tort et al., 2008) in which the phase-amplitude distributions were analysed. Comodulograms is a bidimensional colour map used to measure coupling as described by Tort et al., (2010) and was previously performed by various studies (Canolty et al., 2006; Tort et al., 2008; Tort et al., 2009; Colgin et al., 2009). Coupling was found to vary with each slice. This could probably mean the biological differences such as viability of each slice, receptor expression, interneurons and pyramidal cell expression in each slice obtained daily however, the need for further investigations is high to uncover possible mechanisms behind the coupling.

Modulation of gamma oscillations by theta oscillations has been reported previously in hippocampus in in vitro (Fisahn et al., 1998) and in vivo studies (Bragain et al., 1995; Penttonen et al., 1998; Csicsvari et al., 2003) and this may be due to the contribution of two distinct sets of interneurons. A study reported that, during gamma oscillations O-LM cells
fire at theta frequency (every 4-5 gamma periods), whereas basket cells fire at each gamma cycle (Gloveli et al., 2005b).

PV+ interneurons could form the basis for high coupling in M1 based on the evidence that PV+ interneurons contribute to generation and coupling of theta and gamma oscillations since selective removal of fast synaptic inhibition from PV+ cells using transgenic mouse protocols (Wulff et al., 2009) effectively abolished theta-gamma rhythmogenesis. This suggests fast synaptic inhibition could form the basis for cross frequency coupling (Bragin et al., 1995; Buzsaki et al., 2002; Bartos et al., 2002; Gloveli et al., 2005a; Tort et al., 2007). Since each subtype fire at distinct patters (phase) each subtype of interneurons probably has a unique role in entraining nested rhythms in various regions.

Moreover, McGinn and Valiante have reported that inter-laminar (deep and superficial layers) synchrony within human cortex is linked to the degree of coupling between the theta and gamma oscillations (PAC) (MacGinn and Valiante, 2014) which is inconsistent with a study in rat cortex and striatum (von Nicolai et al., 2014). Theta frequency displays phase differences between deep and superficial layers which are not uniform (Florez et al., 2013) and these oscillations are coordinated between layers. To further investigate this, McGinn and Valiante performed phase-dependent power correlations, and phase coherence (PDPC) studies (Womelsdorf et al., 2007) which revealed that “both theta power and theta synchrony are related to one another between [deep and superficial] cortical laminae. At the population level, increases in theta power within the LFP may arise from increased synchrony and/or number of theta generating elements (i.e., neurons or small circuits; Buzsaki et al., 2012) and possibly increased spiking (Reimann et al., 2013)” (MacGinn and Valiante, 2014). They have also demonstrated that significant correlation existed between PAC and PDPC mostly within theta band (4-12 Hz) and is particularly strong in deep layers suggesting PAC increases with increase in theta synchrony between the layers. Given the dominance of cortico-cortical projections (Douglas and Martin, 2004) in superficial layers and output to subcortical regions in deep layers, theta oscillations may represent a mechanism of coordinating cortical outputs. Inter-laminar synchrony at theta frequency may have been well preserved in slices with isolated cortical regions such as M1 and S1 (sub-cortical connections being cut off) and this could probably reflect high coupling in isolated slices compared to intact slices and also providing scope for further investigations.

Pharmacological agents such as ketamine have been reported to influence PAC (Caixeta et al., 2013). In their study, an NMDAR antagonist, ketamine, has shown a dose dependent effect on theta and gamma coupling with an increase in PAC at low dose and decrease in PAC at high doses. Therefore, it is essential to perform PAC before and after various receptor modulators or even throughout the recording to identify how various receptors are
contributing to PAC. This is not explored in our study but gives plenty of room for future work.

Interestingly, human hippocampus and cortex exhibited different properties in that PAC in hippocampus was the strongest at the phase of slow theta band (2.5-5 Hz) and both low (35-70 Hz) and high gamma (70-130 Hz) whilst, the phase of high theta band (4-9 Hz) was preferred with low gamma exhibiting greater coupling in cortex (Lega et al., 2016). This observation may prove the difference between hippocampal theta oscillations among humans (< 5Hz) and rats (6-12Hz) (Lega et al., 2012; Watrous et al., 2013; Jacobs et al., 2014). It would be beneficial to apply these frequency specific studies in the PAC data that was observed in M1 and S1 of rat slices.

3.5 Final conclusions

Trans-cardial perfusion, sagittal slice preparation, modified aCSF solution as well as addition of neuro-protectants have greatly increased slice viability. Co-application of KA and CCh induced persistent theta and gamma oscillations. This dual rhythm was identified to be led by S1 in an intact slice but both M1 and S1 have individual rhythm generators. These nested oscillations seem to have distinct mechanisms and were identified to be coupled from PAC analysis. However, the percentage of coupling varied in various types of slice preparations with high modulation index (MI) in M1 only slice followed by S1 only slice when compared to intact slice preparations.
4 Characterisation of pharmacologically induced delta oscillations in LV of primary motor cortex (M1)
4.1 Introduction

4.1.1 Neurochemical aspects of the sleep-wake cycle

The sleep-wake cycle is associated with electrical and chemical changes that enable the transition between various sleep and awake states. However, overall orchestrated coordination of these electrical and chemical processes in specific brain regions have yet to be explored. We now know that neurons in various regions in the brain such as hypothalamus and brain stem undergo transitions between states via regulated release of various neuromodulators in cortex and thalamus and these are discussed below:

**Acetylcholine (ACh)** has been identified to play a role in both sleep and awake states. Cholinergic neurons fire at high frequency in the awake state whilst showing no activity in REM sleep. The NREM state has been shown to have an intermediate cholinergic tone (Hobson et al., 2003; Espana and Scammell, 2004; Jones, 2005). Interestingly, ACh neurons in pedunculopontine (PPN), have been identified to have high firing rates both in wake and REM sleep (Wake-ON) more in REM than wake or non-REM sleep (REM-ON) in which the increased firing was observed 20-60 s prior to state change. This shift in patterns has been suggested to underpin the role of PPN in desynchronizing the cortex during awake and REM states (Steriade et al., 1990).

**Dopamine (DA)** plays a key role in arousal and sleep states. DA has been implicated in awake-associated behaviours such as movement, cognition and arousal as lesioning dopaminergic innervations has shown to decrease arousal. In Parkinson's, a neurodegenerative disease with symptoms caused by depletion of DA, sufferers show difficulty in active awake-state maintenance. CNS stimulants such as amphetamines and cocaine act on dopaminergic systems which enhances arousal, increased vigilance and attention either by stimulating DA release or by inhibiting re-uptake. Interestingly, compounds like caffeine, that does not act via DA systems, may also influence DA release in the synaptic cleft (Schultz and Miller, 2004; Boutrel and Koob, 2004; Espana and Scammell, 2004; Wisor, 2005; Jones, 2005). Despite the above evidence that DA is critical for arousal, it has not traditionally been grouped with the reticular activating system based on the fact that DA neurons fire at equal rates both in awake and sleep states (Trulson et al., 1981).

**Histamine (HA)** was found to be wake promoting from the fact that histaminergic neurons fire at higher rates in awake state while remaining silent during REM and NREM sleep (Takahashi et al., 2006), which was revealed in electrophysiological recordings. Furthermore, increased sleepiness is an unwanted side effect of some anti-histamines (Hobson et al., 2003; Jones, 2005).
Serotonin (5-HT) also has been implicated in wake promoting since serotonergic cells fire at a maximum rate in awake state with progressive decline in activity in NREM sleep and no activity in REM sleep. However, the activity was found to be resumed prior to the end of REM episodes (McGinty and Harper, 1976; Trulson and Jacobs, 1979). Although evidence supports the role of 5-HT in the awake state, there is controversy over its role in sleep (Jones, 2005; Espana and Scammell, 2004). Studies suggest this confusion is probably due to many receptor subtypes as well as many activities attributed to 5-HT (Espana and Scammell, 2004; Jones, 2005).

GABA concentration was found to be the highest in cortex during NREM sleep and is reduced in REM sleep in comparison to awake state (NREM>awake>REM) (Vanini et al., 2011). Increased levels of extracellular GABA may indeed enhance synaptic inhibition whereby balancing synaptic inhibition and excitation in slow wave sleep (Haider et al., 2006; Rudolph et al., 2007). However, several studies have identified co-release of GABA with ACh and HA suggesting decreased levels of GABA in NREM sleep (Saunders et al., 2015; Yu et al., 2015).

4.1.2 Significance of delta oscillations

Delta oscillations have been implicated both in deep sleep state and awake states performing cognitive tasks. This apparent contradiction was explained by the existence of some type of inhibition during task that would inhibit the non-relevant neuronal activity (Vogel et al., 1968) known as behavioural inhibition (Kamarajan et al., 2004; Knyazev, 2007; Putman, 2011). Behavioural studies on humans showed that delta oscillations which are prevalent in deep sleep may mediate an enhancement in declarative memory (Huber et al., 2004; Aeschbach, 2009). Rotation adaption tasks on human subjects performed in this study showed a greater correlation between increases in the 1-4 frequency range and improved task performance after sleeping in EEG of cerebral cortex (Huber et al., 2004). Sleep has been suggested to facilitate memory consolidation by strengthening and stabilising memories (Gais et al., 2000; Stickgold et al., 2000; Maquet, 2001; Walker and Stickgold, 2006; Rasch and Born, 2013). It was demonstrated that better performance was observed in a group that were allowed to sleep after learning compared to a group that were awake after learning. Besides consolidation of previously acquired memories sleep also plays a role in acquisition of new memories (Van Der Werf et al., 2009) which was proved in a study where short period of sleep preceding learning has enabled a greater capacity to encode information (Mander et al., 2011). Also, it has been reported that the synaptic plasticity associated with low frequency oscillations during sleep contribute to memory consolidation processes (Steriade and Timofeev, 2003). Interestingly, some studies have suggested a role for the phase component of delta oscillations in decision making and signal detection (Basar-Eroglu et al., 1992) by rhythmically modulating the rate of sensory
information received over time (Wyart et al., 2012) and in many cognitive processes (Basar et al., 2001). Delta oscillations are also known to play a critical role in pathological conditions: decreased synchronous delta activity was observed in schizophrenic patients (Ford et al., 2008), reduced delta amplitude and coherence in Alzheimer’s patients (Guntekin et al., 2008; Yener and Basar et al., 2010) increased delta power in Parkinson’s patients under medication (Kryzhanovskii et al., 1990) and disrupted delta activity in epilepsy (Tao et al., 2011; for review see Harmony, 2013).

Despite its functional significance, cellular mechanisms of cortical delta rhythmogenesis and its mechanistic origin have not yet been explored. There is a hypothesis that the cortical delta rhythm was mediated by intrinsically bursting neurons (Amzica and Steriade, 1998) however, in that study the usage of depolarising current pulse (intercellular injections) did not match with long lasting hyperpolarization conditions during sleep reported in cortex (Steriade et al., 2001; Timofeev et al., 2000). This leads to further discrepancies regarding the mechanism underlying cortical delta rhythm. A recent study in slices containing secondary somatosensory/parietal area (S2/Par2) has revealed generation of delta oscillations in vitro by maintaining neuro-modulatory state equivalent to deep sleep state (Carracedo et al., 2013). Our current study performed on LV of M1 demonstrates the generation of delta oscillations by pharmacological manipulations and investigates the contribution of various receptors involved in the rhythm generation and the pharmacological equivalent awake state. Characterisation of delta rhythm in control slice preparations may facilitate understanding of the mechanisms underlying various pathological conditions like Alzheimer’s disease.
4.2. Pharmacology of delta oscillations in M1.

4.2.1 Pharmacological induction of delta oscillations in M1

It is evident that there was no spontaneous activity in M1, however, it was possible to induce activity by pharmacological manipulations. Theta (6-10 Hz) and gamma (30-37 Hz) oscillations were induced by co-application of 150 nM of KA and 10 µM of CCh (see chapter 3 for details). Delta (2-4 Hz) oscillations were induced by mimicking the neuromodulatory state of deep sleep via low dopaminergic and cholinergic tone. KA (150 nM) and CCh (10 µM) was added half an hour prior to recording as this gave time for slices to settle into rhythmic activity. Theta (6-10 Hz) and gamma (30-37 Hz) oscillations emerged after half an hour. At this point, a bath solution (aCSF) which contained KA (150 nM) and CCh (10 µM) was changed to the one that contained: KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM). Application of either D1 or D2 antagonist along with low CCh did not induce delta oscillations indicating the need for both D1 and D2 receptor antagonists to induce delta activity. There was a transition from fast oscillations: Theta (6-10 Hz) and gamma (30-37 Hz) to slow oscillations: slow theta (5-7 Hz) and beta oscillations (25-30 Hz) before a high amplitude delta oscillation (2-4 Hz, ~400 μV², n=200) with mean frequency 3.1 ± 0.2 Hz emerged (figure 4.1, 4.2).
Figure 4.1a Pharmacological induction and transition of delta oscillations (2-4 Hz).

(A) Representative extracellular voltage recordings of activity during development of delta rhythm in SCH23390 & haloperidol. Gamma (30-40 Hz), beta (25-29 Hz), theta-1 (6-10 Hz), theta-2 (5-7 Hz) and delta (2-4 Hz) oscillations (scale: 20 μV x 500 ms). (B) Power spectra of oscillatory activity during application of SCH23390 & haloperidol in 30 min (dotted line), in 60 min (red line). Note how gamma-theta activity gradually shifted into beta and slow theta (5-7 Hz) oscillations (dotted), before a high amplitude (20-400 μV²) delta rhythm (red) emerged.

Figure 4.1b. Representative typical delta oscillation in LV of M1 (2-4 Hz)

(A) Raw data of an example typical delta oscillation recorded from LV of M1 (B) representative power spectrum of pharmacologically induced delta activity in neuromodulatory state (low dopaminergic and low cholinergic tone).
At the beginning of this project, low cholinergic and low dopaminergic states were induced only after prior induction of theta and gamma oscillations, hence, delta oscillations appeared relatively late into experiments. In order to save time and to keep slices viable, later experiments were started off by bath application of low CCh, KA, D1 and D2 antagonists and this was also found to reliably induce delta oscillations (stable for 2-3 hr) in 73% of slices. This approach enabled me to perform pharmacological studies using various receptor modulators. In the following report, ‘control’ (normalised to 100%) refers to a period where stable delta oscillations were present and there was no change noticed in frequency and amplitude over 20 min period. The effect of drug was then measured after 40 min of bath application (unless otherwise stated) which was then compared with control.

4.2.2 Laminar studies of delta oscillations through M1

Investigations were performed in sagittal slice preparation as it contained intact M1-S1 connections as well as easily identifiable gross anatomy. All layers except LI showed delta activity however, relative power reduced from deep to superficial layers. To address this, simultaneous recordings across the layers (LII, LIII, LV, LVI) were examined. Figure 4.2 A, B shows the power in various layers with LV being normalised to 100%. To further investigate if LV was the source of origin for delta oscillatory activity, recordings were made by placing a reference electrode in LV and ‘walking’ a second electrode up the layers V to II. The data obtained from each layer were analysed by performing cross-correlation analysis with data from LV as reference point. These cross-correlation studies showed that oscillatory activity in LII and LIII was phase delayed to that of LV. The average time lag was found to be 2.4 ± 0.4 and 2.3 ± 0.6 ms for LII and LIII respectively. However, delta oscillatory activity in LVI was found to precede to that of LV by 2.1 ± 1 ms. (figure 4.2 C, D, E). Due to the difficulty in identifying the exact boundary between LV and LVI, cross correlation analysis was performed between deep (LV/LVI) and superficial layers (LII/LIII) in which superficial layers showed an average phase lag of 2.6 ± 0.7 ms (figure 4.2 F). This suggests the origin of delta oscillations to be deep layers and hence the subsequent recording were being made from deep layers especially from LV due to its salient feature of the presence of Betz cells.
Figure 4.2 Deep layers are the origin of delta oscillation in M1

(A) Relative peak power changes in LII, LIII, LVI (grey) with respect to LV (black) activity (normalised to 100%). (B) Power spectrum of normalised oscillatory activity in each layer, LII, LIII, LVI, LV (100%) in a single slice. (C) cross-correlation analysis between LII/LV (red) and LV/LV (black). (D) cross-correlation analysis between LIII/LV (red) and LV/LV (black). (E) cross-correlation analysis between LVI/LV (red) and LV/LV (black). (F) cross-correlation analysis between superficial (red) and deep layers (black).
4.2.3 Cholinergic modulation of delta oscillations

To determine the role of CCh in delta oscillations whether it is via muscarinic acetylcholine receptors, general mAChR antagonists, atropine (AT) and pirenzepine (PIR) were bath applied. AT (5 µM) significantly desynchronised delta activity and the amplitude was decreased to 23.8 ± 5% of control (p< 0.001, n=8). PIR (10 µM) also significantly decreased delta power to 21.5 ± 7.5% of control (p< 0.001, n=8) indicating the action of muscarinic receptors is M1 specific. PIR showed significant reduction in power within 10 min of bath application (figures 4.3A-B) implying delta oscillations are reliant on M1 mAChRs.

![Figure 4.3](image)

**Figure 4.3 Muscarinic receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power**

(A) Effect of atropine (10 µM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 20 µV vs 1 min). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) AT (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8. (B) Effect of pirenzepine (10 µM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 20 µV vs 1 min). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) PIR (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8.
4.2.4 Gap junction modulation of delta oscillations

To examine the involvement of gap junctions in incidence of delta oscillations, the gap junction blocker, carbenoxolone (CBNX) was added. CBNX (200 µM) abolished the synchronous activity after two hours of application. Peak power was reduced to 4.5 ± 0.5% of control (n=6, P<0.01) suggesting a significant role of gap junctions in delta oscillation generation in Layer 5 of M1 (figure 4.4)

Figure 4.4 Gap junction block decreases delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of carbenoxolone (200 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) CBNX (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8
4.2.5 GABA\(_{\alpha}R\) modulation of delta oscillations

Contribution of GABA\(_{\alpha}R\) on pharmacologically induced delta oscillations in layer V of M1 was investigated by perfusing GABA\(_{\alpha}R\) agonists and antagonists and comparing the activity before and after the application of drug.

Zolpidem, a benzodiazepine site agonist was bath applied at a concentration of 10 nM, 30 nM and 50 nM. As Fig. 4.5 shows, delta activity is exquisitely sensitive to benzodiazepine site modulation. Hence, 10 nM of Zolpidem increased the peak power of delta oscillations to 123 ± 9 % of control whilst at 30 and 50 nM peak power of delta activity was reduced to 44 ± 4% and 11 ± 3% respectively.

![Figure 4.5 GABA\(_{\alpha}R\) receptor agonist shows concentration dependent differential effects on delta oscillatory power](image)

**Figure 4.5 GABA\(_{\alpha}R\) receptor agonist shows concentration dependent differential effects on delta oscillatory power**

(A) Effect of Zolpidem (10 nM, 30 nM and 50 nM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black), after 10 nM (red), 30 nM (dotted line) and 50 nM (solid line) of Zolpidem. (ii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after 10 nM (red), 30 nM (lined) and 50 nM (lined) of drug application normalised to control. *** p<0.001, p<0.01, n=8.

In order to investigate the role of the GABA at the orthosteric binding site of the GABA\(_{\alpha}R\), gabazine (GBZ), a competitive GABA\(_{\alpha}R\) antagonist was applied at 250nM and 2.5 μM concentrations. Both concentrations significantly reduced synchronous delta activity to
26.50 ± 5% and 11.7 ± 4% of control respectively (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 4.6A), suggesting roles for both synaptic and extra-synaptic receptors. The effect of picrotoxin (PTX), a non-competitive channel blocker which acts by preventing the entry of Cl⁻ ions into the neuron was examined. 5 μM PTX significantly reduced the synchronous activity to 25.50 ± 13% of control (n=8, P<0.01) (figure 4.6B). Taken together, these data suggest delta activity depends on inhibitory GABAAR receptors in layer V of M1.

![Figure 4.6](image)

**Figure 4.6 GABAAR receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power**

**(A)** Effect of gabazine (250 nM and 2.5 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 40 μV vs 500 ms) (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after 250 nM (red) and 2.5 μM (dotted line) gabazine. (ii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. *** p<0.001, n=8.

**(B)** Effect of picrotoxin (50 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 20 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black red) and after picrotoxin (red) (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **p<0.01, n=8.
4.2.6 GABA\(_B\)R modulation of delta oscillations

To investigate if pharmacologically induced delta oscillations require the activation of GABA\(_B\)R, CGP55845, a competitive GABA\(_B\)R antagonist was bath applied. 5 μM of CGP55845 significantly decreased the delta synchronisation to 71.50 ± 14% of control (n=8, \(P<0.01\)) suggesting a small but significant GABA\(_B\)R contribution to the power of delta oscillations (figure 4.7).

Figure 4.7 GABA\(_B\) receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of CGP55845 (5 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 30 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after CGP55845 (red) (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **\(p<0.01\), n=8.
4.2.7 iGluR modulation of delta oscillations

KAR modulation of delta oscillations: To investigate the role of kainate receptors and to confirm the action of KA is through kainate receptors, UBP310 (a GluK1/3 antagonist) and UBP 304 (a GluK1-selective antagonist) were bath applied. 10 μM of UBP304 and 3 μM of UBP310 significantly decreased the power of delta activity to 14.50 ± 4% of control (n=8, p<0.01) and 29.0 ± 0.5% of control (n=8, p<0.001) respectively (figures 4.8A-B). These data suggest an important role for KAR in delta oscillogenesis given that KA is used to evoke oscillations.

Figure 4.8 Kainate receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of UBP310 (3 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 30 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) UBP310 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. *** p<0.001, n=8. (B) Effect of UBP304 (10 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 20 μV vs 1 min). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) UBP304 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **p<0.01, n=8.
4.2.7.1 AMPAR modulation of delta oscillations

The dependence of delta oscillations on AMPAR was investigated by using SYM2206, a specific AMPAR antagonist. Application of 20 μM of SYM2206 significantly desynchronised the delta activity. It reduced the power to 29.50 ± 6% of control (n=8, p<0.01) (figure 4.9A). In order to assess the contribution of combined AMPAR/KAR activity, we applied 25 μM CNQX, a KAR/AMPAR antagonist. CNQX significantly reduced the synchronous delta activity (figure 4.9B) to 15.50 ± 6% of control (n=8, P<0.001) revealing the role of both KA and AMPA receptors in generation of delta oscillations but stronger role for KAR.

**Figure 4.9 AMPA receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power**

(A) Effect of SYM2206 (20 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 70 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) SYM2206 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **p<0.01, n=8.

(B) Effect of CNQX (25 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 40 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) CNQX (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. *** p<0.001, n=8
4.2.7.2 NMDAR modulation of delta oscillations

The role of NMDA receptors was tested using 2-AP5, a competitive NMDAR antagonist. 50 μM 2-AP5 did not alter the delta peak (95.5 ± 17 % of control, n=8, P>0.05) (figure 4.10A). To confirm this lack of reliance of delta oscillations on NMDAR, a selective non-competitive antagonist, MK-801 was bath applied. Application of MK-801 had no significant effect on peak delta power (n=8, P>0.05, figure 4.10B)

Figure 4.10 NMDA receptor block has no effect on delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of 2-AP5 (50 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 60 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) 2-AP5 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8. (B) Effect of MK801 (10 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 20 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) MK801 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.0, n=8.
4.2.8 mGluR modulation of delta oscillations

The contributions of mGluR to delta activity was investigated by using positive and negative receptor modulators of group I, group II and group III mGluRs. Agonists generally decreased the peak power whilst antagonists increased peak delta power.

Group I modulation of delta oscillations: Application of the mGluR group I agonist DHPG (10 µM) did not show any significant effect (p>0.05, n=8). Consistently, the non-competitive mGluR1 antagonist CPCCOet (25 µM) had no effect on delta oscillations (p>0.05, n=8) whereas as mGluR5 specific antagonist MPEP (20 µM) and potent mGluR5 antagonist MTEP (100 nM) significantly increased the activity to 187 ± 22.5% of control and 189 ± 29% (n=8, p<0.01) respectively (figures 4.11 A-D), suggesting a role for mGluR5, rather than mGluR1 in modulation of delta power.
**Figure 4.11** Effect of group I, mGlu receptor modulators on delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of DHPG (10 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) DHPG (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8.

(B) Effect of cpccoet (25 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) cpccoet (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8.

(C) Effect of MTEP (100 nM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 30 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) MTEP (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8.

(D) Effect of MPEP (20 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 40 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) MPEP (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8.
Group II modulation of delta oscillations: The group II (mGluR3) agonist, LY379268 (1 μM) showed a significant reduction in synchronous delta activity to 41.80 ± 10 % of control (p<0.01, n=8). mGluR2 antagonist LY341495 (100 nM) and mGlu-R2/3 antagonist LY341495 (1 μM) did not show any significant effect on peak power of delta oscillations (p>0.05, n=8) (figure 4.12 A-B). Please note that the figure Aii shows an effect on frequency however this effect was not significant when data were pooled.

Figure 4.12 Effect of group II, mGlu receptor modulators on delta oscillatory power
(A) Effect of LY379268 (1 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 40 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) LY379268 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8.

(B) Effects of LY341495 (100 nM and 1 μM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 100 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording showing peak power before (black) and after 100 nM (red) and 1 μM (dotted line) LY341495. (ii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.5, n=8.
**Group III** modulation of delta oscillations: L-AP4 (50 µM), an agonist and an antagonist
CPPG (10 µM), an antagonist, did not show any significant effect on peak power of delta
oscillations (p>0.05, n=8) (figures 4.13 A-B).

**Figure 4.13 Effect of group III, mGlu receptor modulators on delta oscillatory power**

(A) Effect of L-AP4 (50 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in
oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 40 µV vs 500 ms).
(ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak
responses before (black) and after (red) L-AP4 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory
power of oscillations before (grey bars) and after (red bars) drug application normalised to
control. ns p>0.05, n=8. (B) Effect of CPPG (10 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data
showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application
(scale: 30 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording
demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) CPPG (iii) Bar graphs showing
peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application
normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8.
4.2.9 Pharmacological equivalent awake state: delta reversal protocol

Having investigated the pharmacology of persistent delta activity in M1, we determined to attempt to mimic the switch to awake-state neurochemistry. This section details the various pharmacological equivalent awake state protocols that were used to try and reverse the delta which was pharmacologically induced. All the recordings form this section were made from LV of M1.

4.2.9.1 Effect of KA+CCh (wash) on delta oscillations:

To investigate if delta induced by bath application of KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM), perfusing solution (aCSF) was changed to the one that contained KA (150 nM), CCh (10 µM). There was no significant change either in power or in frequency. Concentrations of KA and CCh were doubled to observe any change but there was not any change confirming the stable and persistent nature of the delta oscillations (p>0.05, n=8) (figure 4.14).

Figure 4.14 No significant change was noticed in frequency and power of delta oscillations in wash

(A) Effect of wash (150 nM KA+10 µM CCh) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) wash (scale: 70 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) wash (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) wash normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8.
4.2.9.2 Effect of high KA on delta oscillations

To determine the effect of high concentrations of KA on delta oscillations, 250 nM, 350 nM, 500 nM KA were bath applied. Since all the concentrations showed similar effect, only the highest is reported here. KA at 500 nM induced seizure like activity with very high power 1350 ± 600% of control with frequency range of 0.5-1 Hz (n=8, figure 4.15) which is different to that of induced delta oscillations of 2-4 Hz frequency range. However, delta oscillations were found to be intact when traces were filtered but were potentially masked by high amplitude and low frequency activity. The power of the activity was reduced to 69 ± 4 % of control.

Figure 4.15 Seizure like activity was induced in the presence of high KA with intact delta

(A) Effect of high KA (500 nM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) high KA (scale: 150 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) wash (iii) Bar graphs showing delta oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) high KA normalised to control. ns p>0.05. The boxed area represents the expanded graph at 2-5Hz.
4.2.9.3 Effect of high CCh on delta oscillations

To investigate if enhancing the cholinergic drive (dominance in awake state) would enable the reversal of induced delta oscillation, high concentrations of CCh were bath applied. When 100 µM was bath applied, seizure activity was induced with a high power 2150 ± 300% of control with low frequency of about 0.5-1 Hz, different to actual delta oscillations (2-4 Hz) (figure 4.16). Interestingly, delta oscillations were found to be intact but were possibly masked by high amplitude and low frequency oscillations similar to that of high KA. The power of delta oscillations was significantly reduced to 52 ± 3 % of control.

Figure 4.16 Seizure like activity was induced in the presence of high CCh with delta intact

(A) Effect of high CCh (100 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) high CCh (scale: 200 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) wash (iii) Bar graphs showing delta oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) high CCh normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8. The boxed area represents the expanded graph at 2-5Hz.
4.2.9.4 Effect of DA on delta oscillations

To examine if dopaminergic drive would reverse slow oscillations (2-4 Hz) to faster oscillations since low dopaminergic state was used to induce delta oscillations. DA was bath applied along with 250 µM of ascorbic acid to prevent DA from oxidising (Hastings et al., 1996) since DA is an unstable molecule (Graham, 1978). 30 µM DA (data not shown) did not show any significant effect in terms of amplitude and frequency whilst 50 µM of DA slightly enhanced the power of delta oscillations to $110 \pm 10\%$ ($p<0.05$) but showed no effect on frequency (figure 4.17).

![Figure 4.17](image.png)

**Figure 4.17** DA increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency

(A) Effect of DA (50 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) DA (scale: 60 µV vs 500 ms), (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) wash (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) DA normalised to control. ns $p<0.05$, n=8.
4.2.9.5 Effect of HA on delta oscillations

Histamine (HA) was bath applied to investigate if histaminergic drive (associated with awake state) would change the low frequency delta oscillations to faster oscillations. 200 µM of HA, when applied to bath, significantly increased the peak power to 116 ± 4% (p<0.05, n=8) but frequency range remained the same (figure 4.18).

Figure 4.18 HA increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency

(A) Effect of HA (200 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) HA (scale: 70 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) wash (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) HA normalised to control. ns p<0.05, n=8.
4.2.9.6 Effect of combined awake-state drugs on delta oscillations

Neuromodulators (without any dopamine antagonists) (KA (150 nM), CCh (10 µM), GABA (1 µM), DA (50 µM), HA (200 µM) and 5-HT (1 µM) that are prevalent in awake state are bath applied to examine if this mixture would enable the reversal of pharmacologically induced delta oscillations. Ascorbic acid (250 µM) was bath applied along with the mixture above to prevent DA oxidation (Hastings et al., 1996). When bath was applied with this mixture, delta peak power was increased significantly to 170 ± 9% of control (n=8, p<0.01) but again without change in frequency range (figure 4.19).

![Figure 4.19](image)

**Figure 4.19** Awake drug mixture increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency

**(A)** Effect of awake drug mixture ((KA (150 nM), CCh (10 µM), GABA (1 µM), DA (50 µM), HA (200 µM), 5-HT (1 µM)) on delta oscillations

**(i)** Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) awake mixture (scale: 70 µV vs 500 ms).

**(ii)** Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) awake drug mixture.

**(iii)** Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) awake mixture normalised to control. ns p<0.001, n=8.
4.2.9.7 Effect of waking-state pharmacology before inducing delta oscillations

To investigate if this drug mixture ((KA (150 nM), CCh (10 µM), GABA (1 µM), DA (50 µM), HA (200 µM), 5-HT (1 µM), Ascorbic acid (250 µM)) had any impact on induction of delta oscillations, this mixture was bath applied on theta and gamma oscillations which were induced when bath applied KA and CCh. This drug mixture significantly increased the power of theta and gamma oscillations. These fast oscillations graduated to slow oscillations and to delta oscillations upon application of KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM) (n=8, figure 4.20)

Figure 4.20 Induction of delta oscillations in the presence of awake drug mixture

(A) Effect of awake drug mixture ((KA (150 nM), CCh (10 µM), GABA (1 µM), DA (50 µM), HA (200 µM), 5-HT (1 µM), Ascorbic acid (250 µM)) on induction delta oscillations (i) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) awake drug mixture on theta and gamma oscillations (iii) Representative power spectrum illustrating the transition of fast oscillations (black) to slow oscillations (dotted line) and to delta oscillations (red) in the presence of awake drug mixture (n=8).
4.2.9.8 Effect of AMPH on delta oscillations

To investigate if CNS stimulants would change the frequency range, amphetamine sulphate (AMPH) was bath applied. Application of 20 µM and 40 µM increased the peak delta power to 123 ± 6% of control (n=8, p<0.01) but no effect on frequency range (figure 4.21).

Figure 4.21 AMPH increases the power of delta oscillations but no effect on frequency

(A) Effect of AMPH (20 µM) on delta oscillations (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) AMPH (scale: 50 µV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) wash (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) AMPH normalised to control. ns p<0.05, n=8.
4.2.9.9 Effect of AMPH before inducing delta oscillations

The effect of AMPH on induction of delta oscillations was examined by bath application of AMPH on theta and gamma oscillations. When 20 µM of AMPH was bath applied, there was a significant increase in the peak power of theta and gamma oscillations. However, there is no transition to delta oscillations upon application of KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM) even after 2 hours of observation. (n=8, figure 4.22) but to our surprise it revealed an increase in theta power (mean frequency: 7.9 ± 0.6 Hz).

Figure 4.22 Delta was not induced in the presence of AMPH

(A) Effect of AMPH (20 µM) on induction delta oscillations (i) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) AMPH on theta and gamma oscillations (iii) Representative power spectrum illustrating the transition of fast oscillations (black) to slow oscillations (dotted line) and to theta oscillations (red) in the presence of awake drug mixture (n=8). Note: No delta was induced in the presence of AMPH.
4.2.10 Summary of results
Pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of M1 was summarised in table below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug (concentration)</th>
<th>% Change of Control</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>atropine (5 µM) [mACh antagonist]</td>
<td>23.8 ± 5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pirenzepine (10 µM) [mACh antagonist]</td>
<td>21.5 ± 7.5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carbenoxolone (200µM) [Gap junction blocker]</td>
<td>4.5 ± 0.5</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zolpidem (10 nM,30 nM,50 nM) [GABAAR agonist]</td>
<td>123±9,41±4,11±3</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>** , *** , ***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gabazine (250 nM,25 µM) [GABAAR antagonist]</td>
<td>26.6 ± 5, 11.7 ± 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picrotoxin (5 µM) [GABAAR antagonist]</td>
<td>25.9 ± 13</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CGP55845 (5 µM) [GABABR antagonist]</td>
<td>71.48 ± 14</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBP310 (3 µM) [KAR antagonist]</td>
<td>29.27 ± 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UBP304 (10 µM) [KAR antagonist]</td>
<td>14.5 ± 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYM2206 (20 µM) [AMPAR antagonist]</td>
<td>29.15 ± 6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNQX (25 µM) [KA/AMPAR antagonist]</td>
<td>15.77 ± 6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>***</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2-AP5 (50 µM) [NMDAR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MK801 (10 µM) [NMDAR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHDG (10 µM) [groupI mGluR agonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cpccoet (25 nM) [gl mGluR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTEP (100 µM) [gl mGluR antagonist]</td>
<td>187 ± 23</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MPEP (20 µM) [gl mGluR antagonist]</td>
<td>189 ± 29</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LY 379268 (1 µM) [groupII mGluR agonist]</td>
<td>41.8 ± 11</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LY 341495 (100 nM,1 µM) [gll mGluR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L-AP4 (50 µM) [groupIII mGluR agonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPPG (10 µM) [glll mGluR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>ns</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.1 Pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of M1
Peak power changes after application of various receptor modulators is represented as mean ± SEM when compared to control (normalised to 100%). N= number of recordings (obtained from 3 different animals), significance: ns p>0.05, * p<0.05, **p<0.01, ***p<0.001.
Delta reversal protocol was summarised in table below. Note delta was found to be irreversible as there was no change in frequency of the oscillations but there was changes in peak power of delta oscillations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug (concentration)</th>
<th>%Change of Control</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>KA (150 nM)+CCh (10 µM)</td>
<td>ns</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high KA (500 nM)</td>
<td>ns</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>high CCh (50 µM)</td>
<td>ns</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Ns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dopamine (50 µM)</td>
<td>110 ± 10</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>histamine (200 µM)</td>
<td>116 ± 4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amphetamine Sulphate (20 µM)</td>
<td>123 ± 6</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>awake mixture (150 nMKA+10 µM CCh+1 µM GABA+1 µM 5HT+50µM DA+200 µM HA+250 µM Ascorbic Acid)</td>
<td>170 ± 9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4.2 Various delta reversal protocols
Peak power changes after application of various receptor modulators is represented as mean ± SEM when compared to control (normalised to 100%). N= number of recordings (obtained from 3 different animals), significance: ns p>0.05, * p<0.05, **p<0.01, ***p<0.001.
4.3 Discussion

Initial LFP recordings revealed the absence of spontaneous oscillatory activity in M1 and S1 in consistent with previous work (Yamawaki, 2008; Johnson, 2016). Co-application of KA and CCh reliably induced beta oscillations (Yamawaki, 2008; Prokic, 2011) in old slice preparations whereas, theta and gamma oscillations were identified both in M1 and S1 (Johnson et al., 2016) with new slice preparation (refer chapter 3 for details). To further investigate the low frequency neuronal network activity in M1 and S1, experiments were performed to induce delta (2-4 Hz) oscillations which are known to be associated with deep sleep stages especially NREM3 and NREM4 stages. Although a number of studies demonstrated the origin of delta oscillations (1-4 Hz) in thalamus (Amzica et al., 1992), relatively less is known about cortical based delta oscillations. A delta rhythm of purely cortical origin has been implicated in in vivo studies (Amzica and Steriade, 1998; Fell et al., 2002) but the mechanisms underlying were not as clear as those in thalamic origin (Pirchio et al., 1997; Hughes et al., 1999; 2002). Additionally, it has been suggested that cortical delta oscillations are generated in a use-dependent manner, in that the cortical circuits that are active during awake states generate these oscillations in the succeeding sleep (Kattler et al., 1994; Huber et al., 2004) and in a region specific way, implying a self-organising property of local neuronal networks (Krueger and Oba’l, 1993; Vassalli and Dijk, 2009; Vyazovskiy et al., 2011). Frontal and parietal cortical regions are known to be delta generators in human cortex during sleep with a possibility of local delta generators for each region (Mormann et al., 2008; Ioannides et al., 2009). A recent in vitro study has indicated delta oscillations in secondary somatosensory cortex/parietal area, S2/Par2 slices prepared from male Wistar rats (Carracedo et al., 2013). None of these studies have indicated the mechanisms and origin of cortical delta rhythm probably because it is challenging to induce delta oscillations unlike gamma oscillations, which can be identified spontaneously or with minimal pharmacological manipulations in regions like CA3, M1, S1, V1 etc. A recent study has revealed that transition of NREM2 to NREM3&4 stages required the neuromodulatory action of cortex itself but not thalamus (Krishnan et al., 2016). We have assumed that the origin of delta oscillations could possibly be primary motor and sensory cortices with these regions being primary projection sites for thalamus, hence the term ‘primary’.

4.3.1 Generation of delta oscillations

Induction of delta oscillations requires a state that mimics the physiologically equivalent deep sleep state. In order to achieve this neuromodulatory state we have tried various protocols using sleep related neurochemicals. Initially 150 nM KA and 10 µM CCh was bath applied to activate the slices since there is no spontaneous activity observed in M1 and S1. Co-application of KA and CCh induced theta and gamma oscillations (see chapter 3). When
\( \text{GABA}_A \) positive modulator, pentobarbital (10-30 \( \mu \text{M} \)) was bath applied at this stage, the oscillations have been desynchronised and very slow oscillations (< 1Hz) were identified which was different to what was expected (2-4 Hz) (data not shown). It was not surprising to see pentobarbital affect frequency with no change in power based on the fact that it acts via phasic inhibition, by opening \( \text{GABA}_A \)R for longer time. Increased IPSC decay has enabled the decrease in frequency (Segal and Baker, 1984). The reciprocal interaction model suggested that the awake state has amnergic dominance and REM sleep state has cholinergic dominance whereas NREM state of sleep has intermediate tone (McCarley and Hobson, 1975). To investigate if low cholinergic tone would induce delta oscillations, aCSF with standard KA (150 nM) and CCh (10 \( \mu \text{M} \)) was replaced to that which contained same KA but low concentration of CCh (2 \( \mu \text{M} \) – 1/5\( ^{\text{th}} \) of what is generally required for cortical activation). Reduction in ACh levels has shown increased excitatory connection strength via AMPA conductance, as well as increased leak (K\(^+\)) currents. This decreased ACh levels have proved to be essential for transition to deep sleep stages (Krishnan et al., 2016). There has been research that suggests CCh when injected bilaterally promoted sleep in vivo (George et al., 1964). This has decreased the power of theta and gamma oscillations but did not induce delta oscillations probably because low cholinergic tone alone was not enough. Since dopamine plays a critical role in promoting arousal, it was suspected whether ambient dopamine in the slices was too high to enable delta induction. This was examined by perfusing the slices with D2 antagonist (Haloperidol 10 \( \mu \text{M} \)) besides KA and CCh based on the evidence that D2 blocking properties has enabled NREM 3 and 4 sleep whilst decreasing awake state (Monti and Monti, 2007). This still did not induce delta oscillations but reduced the frequency of oscillations. To mimic low cholinergic and low dopaminergic state, 150 nM KA, 2 \( \mu \text{M} \) of CCh, D2 antagonist; Haloperidol and D1 antagonist; SCH23390 was bath applied simultaneously. In this condition, it was possible to induce persistent delta oscillations at 2-4 Hz frequency. Interestingly, delta oscillations were not generated either by blocking D1 receptors or D2 receptors on their own which is contrary to recent in vitro work on delta rhythm in rat slices containing secondary somatosensory/parietal area, S2/Par2 (Carracedo et al., 2013) suggesting a physiological difference in the origin of M1 delta rhythm. Changes in power (increase) and frequency (decrease) in the generation of delta meant the involvement pre (phasic) and post-synaptic (tonic) currents. Activation of D1 receptors disturbs long-term depression and increases (spike time dependent) long-term potentiation (Xu and Yao et al., 2010). Furthermore, evidence exists that application of D1 antagonist (SCH 23390) prevented arousal (Trampus et al., 1993) hence, the decrease in D1 tone may be a critical aspect of the current study.
4.3.2 Origin of delta oscillations

All the layers of M1 exhibited delta activity with same mean frequency but Layer V was thought to be the source of origin since the power of delta oscillations was found to be progressing from deep to superficial layers. This is consistent with human invasive electrode in vivo delta studies (Cserca et al., 2010) and also in vitro delta studies that were carried out in rat parietal cortex and human frontal cortical tissue (Carracedo et al., 2013). In vivo awake and sleep delta have been thought to originate mostly from the deep layers of frontal cortex (Knyazev, 2012). Additionally, beta oscillations (Murthy and Fetz, 1996; Donoghue et al., 1998; Yamawaki, 2008) have also been reported to have highest power in Layer V as well as theta and gamma oscillations (Johnson et al., 2017). Theta oscillations in human neocortex slices have shown temporal delays in superficial layers relative to deep layers, suggesting deep layers to be the origin of activity (Florez et al., 2013). In accordance with the idea that deep layers drive slow oscillations, RS neurons in LV have been found to drive pyramidal neurons in superficial layers at low theta range (Carracedo et al., 2013). Initiation of activity in LV was proved by local application of tetrodotoxin (TTX) whilst recording from LII/III and LV. 10 μM of TTX showed no effect on oscillatory activity of LV when locally applied to superficial layers whereas the oscillatory activity was abolished in LII/III when TTX was locally applied in deep layers (LV) (Yamawaki et al., 2008). Correlation studies were performed on simultaneous recordings across each layer (II, III, V, VI) with a reference electrode in LV. These revealed that delta band oscillatory activity in LII and LIII was phase-delayed compared to that of LV however, delta activity in LVI was found to precede to that of LV. As the peak power of delta activity is greater in LV than in LVI, it might be assumed that LV would drive the activity, however, the fact that LVI leads LV suggest the latter as a driver. Unfortunately, it was not possible to isolate deep layers due to experimental difficulties in finding the precise boundary and so we could not directly test the ability of LVI alone to generate delta oscillations. There could be several possible grounds as to why LV may be assumed to drive oscillatory activity. Firstly, the morphological aspects; as it contains high density pyramidal cells in deep layers and also the presence of the Betz cells that were characteristic feature of LV of M1. Betz cells in M1 have extensive projections across all layers up to L1 with a huge cell body (Molnar and Cheung, 2006). Secondly, the physiological properties of the interneuron populations that are present in LV which are responsible for neuronal oscillatory activity at delta frequency (not explored in this study). A strong drive onto vasoactive intestinal peptide-positive (VIP+) cells was identified in M1 and S1 (Lee et al., 2013) and these cells have been identified to receive greater input from LV (Xu and Callaway, 2009) based on the anatomical evidence that layer V projections are more widely diffused than that of superficial layers (Markov et al., 2014). Also, as seen in up/down states of mice sleep state in vivo and in vitro studies, network activation involves
intrinsically bursting (IB) neurons with cell bodies located in LV (Beltramo et al., 2013; Carrecedo et al., 2013). IB cells relate to excitatory synapses and gap junctions which could form the basis for high oscillatory activity in LV (Mercer et al., 2006; Lefort et al., 2009). Current source density studies in human recordings have revealed more synaptic input in superficial layers indicating enhancing the excitation onto distal dendrites in deep layers (LV) (Csercsa et al., 2010). This excitatory output to deep layers from superficial layers have indicated in local circuits (Thomson and Morris, 2002). Previous studies on local circuits have suggested the existence of strong excitatory inputs to LV from other layers (Weiler et al., 2008; Yu et al., 2008; Anderson et al., 2010; Hooks et al., 2011;). Gap junctions between interneurons are known to increase network synchronisation (Gibson et al., 1999; Galarreta and Hestrin, 1999; Traub et al., 2000, 2001, 2003). Also, gap junctions between pyramidal axons have been implicated to enhance output activity of these cells (Schmitz et al., 2001; Traub et al., 2003). Moreover, the existence of most common gap junction subunit, connexion 36 was identified to be densely expressed in deep layers when compared to superficial layers which could be the basis for high amplitude oscillations in LV (Condorelli et al., 2000; LeBeau et al., 2003).

However, LV can not be considered the sole origin of network activity since LVI also contains various cell types that may contribute to generation of oscillatory activity. Cells in LVI receive direct thalamo-cortical input as well as forms an output layer to many thalamic nuclei. The major types of pyramidal cells that were identified in LVI which are distinguished based on shape include: CT (cortico-thalamus) cells that project to thalamus are short, narrow and vertically oriented towards LIV and LV. CC (cortico-cortical) cells that are present only within cortical regions with different shapes from short upright to bipolar neurons (see review Thompson, 2010). But, the functional characterisation of each type remains unexplored (Gonchar et al., 2007). Nevertheless, LVI was reported to provide significant excitatory input to LV pyramidal cells in a paired recording study (Mercer et al., 2005) besides the strong reverse connection from LV to LVI. It is challenging to identify the boundary between LV and LVI in our experiments, therefore we have recorded from deep layers (LV) with it being large area and was easily identified under microscope. A better way to delineate between LV and LVI would be beneficial.
4.3.3 Muscarinic receptor modulation

Application of CCh was essential to induce network activity in M1. Gamma oscillations were desynchronised when muscarinic receptor antagonists were bath applied (Fisahn et al., 1998). Action of CCh was proved to be pre-dominantly via M1 receptors (mACh) as the delta oscillations were desynchronised when pirenzepine, an M1 receptor antagonist was applied to bath which is similar to delta oscillations in in vitro in other brain region like secondary somatosensory/parietal area (S2/Par2) (Carracedo et al., 2013).

4.3.4 Gap junctions

Neuronal network activity is known to be dependent on electrical coupling via gap junctions (Draguhn et al., 1998; Galarreta and Hestrin, 1999; Traub et al., 2000, 2001, 2003). Gap junctions also have a critical role in high frequency oscillations generation and synchronization (Buhl et al., 2003; Hormuzdi et al., 2001) especially in the gamma frequency range (Kopell and Ermentrout, 2004; Hormuzdi et al., 2001). Investigations of (Draguhn et al., 1998) axo-axonal (pyramidal-pyramidal) gap junctions has revealed that action potentials propagate from one cell to another (Draguhn et al., 1998; Schmitz et al., 2001); cortex (Grenier et al., 2001). Connexion-36 subunit knockout experiments revealed a role of axonal gap junctions in initiation of oscillatory activity whilst dendritic (interneuron-interneuron) gap junctions contribute to oscillation coherence (Traub and Bibbig, 2000). When gap junctions were blocked using carbenoxolone, delta oscillations were abolished in M1 after about 2 hours of drug application. The slow action of carbenoxolone is similar to that observed during EEG recordings in vivo, where oscillatory activity at theta frequency was only abolished after 60 min of perfusion (Konopacki et al., 2004). Various gap junction blockers such as octanol (1 mM), CBX (0.2 mM), quinine (0.2 mM) and 18β-glycyrrhetinic acid has shown to decrease or abolish delta oscillations in slices containing secondary somatosensory/parietal area (S2/Par2) (Carracedo et al., 2013) as well as gamma oscillations in other brain regions (Traub and Bibbig, 2000; Cunningham et al., 2004). This evidence suggests the role of gap junction in generation and maintenance of delta oscillations. However, it is critical to note that gap junction modulators are non-specific and could act through mechanisms that are independent of gap junctions (Nakahiro et al., 1991; Rouach et al., 2003). Carbenoxolone is highly non-specific and has indicated to act through various mechanisms that include (but not limited to): block post synaptic NMDAR, reduce IPSCs via GABA_A R, suppress action potentials, blocks calcium channels, and reduces seizure activity besides blocking gap junctions (Rekling et al., 2000; Rouach et al., 2003; Vessey, 2004; Tovar et al., 2009; Connors, 2012) yet still was used in current experiments due to its water-soluble nature and the lack of better alternatives (Konopacki et al., 2004).
Further specific subunit KO experiments would be essential as well as developing selective blockers.

4.3.5 GABA modulation

GABA\textsubscript{A} receptors are ligand gated ion channels. These receptors act by increasing the membrane permeability of anions (Cl\textsuperscript{-} and HCO\textsubscript{3}\textsuperscript{-} ions) which hyperpolarises the membrane resulting in inhibition (Rivera et al., 1999). GABA\textsubscript{A}R antagonists, GBZ and PTX, reduced the power of delta oscillations with no change in frequency range. Dependence of delta oscillations on GABA\textsubscript{A}R implies the requirement of inhibitory currents in M1 like in hippocampal brain regions (Whittington et al., 1995). It is known that the competitive antagonist, GBZ, at low concentration (250 nM) inhibits phasic synaptic currents but not extracellular tonic currents (Farrant & Nusser, 2005) due to the differential affinity of tonic (high affinity) and phasic (low affinity) GABA\textsubscript{A} receptors. Hence, high concentration GBZ (2.5 µM) was bath applied to surpass extra-synaptic tonic currents (Stell and Mody, 2002). 250 nM and 2.5 µM significantly reduced the synaptic synchronous delta activity revealing the role of both synaptic and extra-synaptic receptors in delta rhythm generation. Further investigations were made using a non-competitive channel blocker. PTX (5 µM) acts by binding inside the receptor ionophore which prevents the flow of Cl\textsuperscript{-} (Krishek et al., 1996). PTX reduced the power of delta oscillations. Since pharmacological manipulation of IPSC kinetics using antagonists has meant the change (reduction) in power, tonic inhibition is responsible for delta rhythm initiation (Traub and Whittington, 2010). Surprisingly, these results contrasts with that of in rat secondary somatosensory/parietal area whose delta is GABA\textsubscript{A}R insensitive, suggesting a distinct mechanism between two regions (Carracedo et al., 2013). This may be due to the subunit expression in various regions that are responsible for delta oscillations.

Zolpidem, a benzodiazepine site agonist showed differential effects at various concentrations and was previously demonstrated on beta oscillations in M1 (Prokic et al., 2015). At beta frequency, Zolpidem stabilises a tonic current in a kinetically-slow state, meaning it cannot be desensitised and it therefore acts to hyperpolarise the GABA neurons, reducing oscillatory power. At higher concentrations, there is no slow state and zolpidem enhances power by augmenting inhibition. Interestingly, delta oscillations have shown an increase in delta power at 10 nM and decreased in the power at higher concentrations suggesting the GABA\textsubscript{A}R are not working in the same manner as it they were during beta or gamma activity (Prokic et al., 2015). This could depend on the population of cells and receptor subtypes with different kinetic properties that are recruited for generation of delta oscillations in M1.
The GABA<sub>B</sub> receptors are metabotropic G-protein coupled receptors, which act by inhibiting presynaptic calcium release via adenylyl cyclase (Dunlap and Fischbach, 1981; Hill 1985; Newberry and Nicoll, 1985). On one hand, a study reported that GABA<sub>B</sub>R do not contribute to oscillatory activity induced by CCh (Williams and Kauer, 1997). On the other hand, a study by Whittington<sup>et al.</sup>, has revealed the role of these receptors in determining the duration of gamma oscillations (Whittington<sup>et al.,</sup> 1995). CGP55845 (5 µM), GABA<sub>B</sub>R antagonist reduced the power of synchronous delta oscillations which is in line with hippocampal and cortical gamma and beta oscillations (Yamawaki, 2008; Dugladze<sup>et al.,</sup> 2013) and similar to delta in secondary somatosensory/parietal area (Carracedo<sup>et al.,</sup> 2013) demonstrating the role of slow acting GABA<sub>B</sub>R in delta rhythm generation.

4.3.6 Glutamate modulation

Excitatory currents have been identified to contribute to network oscillatory activity in M1 including theta, gamma and beta oscillations (Yamawaki, 2008, Prokic, 2011, Nicholas, 2016). To investigate iGluR involvement in delta rhythm generation, various receptor antagonists were bath applied. CNQX desynchronised delta oscillations by blocking both KA/AMPAR indicating the requirement of KAR or/and AMPAR. SYM2206, a potent AMPAR antagonist reduced the synchronous activity of delta oscillations GluA1-4 (APAMR) subunit KO studies revealed decrease in AMPA mediated EPSPs, changes in firing properties which in turn disrupted long range synchronisation (Fuchs<sup>et al.,</sup> 2001). KAR antagonists: UBP310 (GluK1/3) and UBP304 (GluK1) also blocked the activity. Kainate receptors were identified to be critical for rhythm generation as well as stabilisation. However, the delta induced in parietal cortex did not show significant effect to AMPA or KA receptors on their own but desynchronised the delta power when both receptors were blocked using CNQX (KA/AMPA blocker) suggesting a distinct mechanism (Carracedo<sup>et al.,</sup> 2013).

It is interesting to note that unlike the generation of beta oscillations in LV of M1 (Yamawaki, 2008), delta oscillations do not require NMDAR, which was in contrast to what was demonstrated both<sup>in vitro</sup> (Carracedo<sup>et al.,</sup> 2013) and<sup>in vivo</sup> studies (Hunt and Kasicki, 2013).<sup>in vitro</sup> studies in rat parietal cortex observed that synchronous delta oscillations were reduced when NMDAR antagonist 2-AP5 was added to bath whereas<sup>in vivo</sup> studies on freely moving rats proved that the delta power was increased in various cortical regions as demonstrated by various studies in the past (Mattia and Moreton, 1986; Marquis<sup>et al.,</sup> 1989; Feinberg and Campbell, 1998). These controversial findings imply further investigation on NMDAR associated with the delta rhythm. Since 2-AP5 is a competitive NMDAR antagonist, MK801 which is a selective non-competitive antagonist was bath applied. However, both drugs showed no effect on delta oscillations. There could be several reasons as to why pharmacologically induced delta oscillations are NMDA insensitive which may include experimental protocol, types of cells expressed in the region recordings were
made, receptor subunit composition and neuronal populations recruited for the rhythm. Moreover, specific subunit KO experiments revealed that GluN1 KO increased firing rate thereby altering the synchrony (Belforte et al., 2010), GluN2B (Kelsch et al., 2014) KO reduced frequency and amplitude of EPSPs and knocking out GluN2C and D (Von Engelhardt et al., 2015) had no change in NMDA mediated EPSPs in hippocampal interneurons. Therefore, comparatively greater expression of GluN2C and D subunits in layer V of M1 could also form the basis for this. Further investigations however are needed to address this by using subunit specific receptor modulators and KO studies.

mGluRs are known to influence rhythmic activity of transient gamma oscillations induced by tetanic stimulation as demonstrated by Whittington et al., (1995). It has been reported that activation of group I mGluRs by DHPG induced gamma oscillations in CA3 which are different to those induced by KA and CCh in CA3 (Palhalmi et al., 2004). However, these receptors showed little contributions to synchronous activity of pharmacologically induced delta oscillations in M1. Moreover, they showed no contribution on pharmacologically induced beta oscillations in same area (Yamawaki, 2008). Only mGlu-R3, mGlu-R5 amongst three groups have been found to contribute to delta rhythm generation. None of the other receptors appeared to be involved in delta in M1. Minor but significant reduction in synchronous delta oscillations was noticed when mGlu-R3 agonist LY379268 was bath applied whilst mGlu-R5 antagonists MTEP and MPEP showed a significant increase in delta oscillations.
4.3.7 Pharmacological equivalent awake state: delta reversal protocol

Neurotransmitters play a critical role not only in sleep and awake states but also in transition state. It was evident that acetylcholine (ACh), histamine (HA), GABA, serotonin (5-HT), dopamine (DA) and nor-epinephrine (NE) are involved in sleep wake mechanisms. High levels of ACh, HA, NE are found in NREM2&3 stages whilst GABA was found to be lowest in these stages when compared to awake state (Aston-Jones and Bloom, 1981; McCormick, 1992; Vazquez and Baghdoyan, 2001; Lena et al., 2005; Vanini et al., 2011). It was interesting that, in REM sleep, ACh levels were found to increase but HA, NE and GABA were observed to decrease (Baghdoyan and Lydic, 2012). The reciprocal interaction model suggested that the awake state has aminergic dominance and REM sleep state has cholinergic dominance whereas NREM state of sleep has intermediate tone (McCarley and Hobson, 1975). Delta oscillations (2-4 Hz) were reliably induced by mimicking neuromodulatory deep sleep (low cholinergic and low dopaminergic) state. This state was obtained by pharmacological manipulation by bathing the slices in 150 nM of KA, 2 µM CCh, 10 µM SCH23390, 10 µM Haloperidol. Subsequent experiments were performed to reverse this state to a pharmacologically equivalent awake state. Since theta and gamma oscillations were identified upon application of KA and CCh, it was assumed that washing the slices in the same would reverse delta oscillations to faster frequency range but no change was observed confirming the persistent nature of delta oscillations. Increased ACh would mean the decrease in AMPA conductance based on experimental findings (Gil et al., 1997; Kimura et al., 1999; Hsieh et al., 2000) which would not influence frequency of oscillations. High concentrations of KA and CCh were bath applied and both lead to seizure like activity which was not surprising as KA and CCh increase the rate of firing whereby inducing seizure like activity as observed in various studies (Ben-Ari et al., 1985; Brudzynski et al., 1995; Stivers et al., 1998; Ben-Ari and Cossart, 2000). Interestingly, when we investigated experiments in high KA and CCh, we found delta intact, but masked by very low frequency and high amplitude activity. High levels of DA has shown an increase in wakefulness in dopamine transporter (DAT) knock out mice (Wiser et al., 2001). Also, application of D1 agonist, SKF38393 increased wakefulness and decreased sleep and a simultaneous block of D1 receptors using an antagonist (SCH23390) prevented arousal (Trampus et al., 1993). Subsequent experiments were carried out using dopamine and histamine assuming the increase in aminergic tone would enable the transition from deep sleep state to awake state but both HA and DA showed an increase in power with no effect on frequency of delta oscillations. High levels of HA has led to effect I\textsubscript{h} current by positively shifting activation curve (McCormick and Williamson, 1991) with no effect on network activity. Moreover, awake drug mixture [KA (150 nM), CCh (10 µM), GABA (1 µM), DA (50 µM), HA (200 µM), 5-HT (1 µM), Ascorbic acid (250 µM)] was used but no change in
frequency range was noticed. This mixture contains ascorbic acid as a neuro-protectant since DA is an unstable molecule (Graham, 1978) and easily gets oxidised to free radicals and reactive quinones (Hastings et al., 1996). However, a massive increase in power of delta oscillations was observed suggesting all the above wake promoting compounds have strengthened the neuronal network synchronisation in M1. Furthermore, amphetamine sulphate, a potent CNS stimulant which is critical for monoamine regulation via trace amine-associated (G-protein coupled) receptor (TAAR1) was bath applied to investigate if this would enable wakeful state (Miller, 2011).

On an interesting note, both awake drug mixture and amphetamine sulphate, when bath applied before delta incidence have shown a significant increase in power of theta and gamma oscillations yet, only the former has enabled delta induction whilst the latter did not. AMPH reverses the DA transit from cytoplasm to extracellular space via DAT which was termed as DA efflux enabling increased locomotion (German et al., 2015; Kopra et al., 2017) in accordance with a study suggesting extracellular dopamine levels have indicated to be higher after AMPH administration in rats (O’Leary et al., 2016). This hyper dopamine levels explains the prevention of delta oscillations which requires low dopaminergic state. Reduction in power of gamma oscillations upon subsequent addition of delta drugs could account for the cytotoxicity caused due to auto-oxidation of high levels DA upon AMPH application (as seen in Carvalho et al., 2012).

Recently, Krishnan et al., (2016) has developed an in silico model that was sufficient to cater the needs to study sleep-wake cycle characteristics which included populations of interneurons (IN) and pyramidal cells (PY) in cortex, thalamic reticular nucleus (RE) and thalamic relay neurons from thalamus based on the previous evidence from literature (Bazhenov et al., 1998, 1999; Timofeev et al., 2000; Bonjean et al., 2011; Chen et al., 2012; Wei et al., 2016). In their study, Krishnan et al show transition from NREM2 to deep sleep (NREM3 & 4) stages required neuromodulatory actions within cortex itself and thalamus was not required. In our own study, we saw delta in slices containing cortex only, confirming the in silico results of Krishnan et al., however, it is not possible for transition to awake states from sleep stages within cortex in our experiments. We speculate that the role of thalamo-cortical connections is critical to reversal of the sleep-like state in our in vitro preparation. This may explain why it was possible to induce delta oscillations in M1 and S1 slices but not possible to reverse it to equivalent awake state. Slice preparations containing various regions involved in sleep, including thalamus, would be helpful to address this issue however, this was currently not possible due to time limitations.
4.3.8 Possible mechanism of delta oscillations in M1

In the current study, we have shown KA and CCh induced theta and gamma oscillations simultaneously which is comparable to previous work in the lab. Delta oscillations are pharmacologically induced in layer V of Primary motor cortex (M1) by maintaining low cholinergic and low dopaminergic tone which is the characteristic feature in deep sleep stages and we have illustrated the transition from fast (gamma and theta) oscillations to slow (mu and beta) oscillations before a high amplitude delta rhythm emerged. Delta rhythm was characterised using various receptor modulators to determine the role of various receptors in the rhythm generation. Current study suggests that these delta oscillations are dependent on GABAR, AMPAR, KAR, mAChR and gap junctions but are independent of NMDAR. mGluRs do not seem to show much contribution to the generation of delta rhythm however mGluR agonists showed a general reduction in the activity whilst the antagonists showed an increase in the activity which is significant only in case of group I mGluR antagonists (MPEP & MTEP). These suggestions were based on the pharmacology performed using various receptor modulators and comparing them with control.
4.3.9 Final conclusions

To our knowledge, this is the first demonstration of motor cortical delta oscillation in vitro and was identified to have a distinct mechanism to that of delta in secondary somatosensory/parietal area (S2/Par2) (also in vitro) (Carracedo et al., 2013). These extracellular studies could prove significant in investigating neuronal network oscillations in pathological states such as PD, AD by using animal models that can enable the comparison of mechanisms. Delta oscillations were induced by KA, CCh, D1 and D2 antagonists and are reliant on both inhibitory and excitatory network activity. AMPAR contribute to overall excitation of the cells, CCh to activate the cells and GABAR to the set the frequency similar to that of gamma oscillations except delta are found independent of NMDAR both in M1 and S1. Based on suggestion that cortical delta oscillations are generated in a use-dependent manner, in that the cortical circuits that are active during awake states generate these oscillations in the succeeding sleep (Kattler et al., 1994; Huber et al., 2004) and in a region specific way, implying a self-organising property of local neuronal networks (Krueger and Oba´l, 1993; Vassalli and Dijk, 2009; Vyazovskiy et al., 2011) reflecting previously prevalent gamma oscillations then become delta oscillations. Pharmacologically induced delta oscillations were found to be irreversible since the frequency of the oscillations had not changed when pharmacologically equivalent awake state was maintained possibly due to experimental limitations. A slice preparation with both cortex and thalamus preserved and also using various wake promoting compounds such as caffeine, adenosine, and orexin would probably enable delta reversal.
5. Characterisation of delta oscillations in S1 and interaction between M1 and S1 at delta frequency.
5.1 Introduction

In some studies (Werth et al., 1997; Finelli et al., 2001), the appearance of slow wave activity was found to follow an ascending pattern from anterior to posterior regions in cerebral cortex, with highest power in frontal areas. This was identified to be promising in the first NREM sleep suggesting a role of frontal regions such as M1 and S1 in sleep management. This was found to be evident in the vibratory stimulation study performed in awake state enhanced the power of delta oscillations in somatosensory cortex during the first cycle of sleep (Kattler et al., 1994) and gradually decreased in subsequent cycles. S1 was chosen based on the fact that it is the primary source of sensory information in rats (Burwell et al., 1995). The term ‘primary’ is used to describe sensory cortex that receives unimodal input directly from the thalamus.

Anatomical studies have shown that M1 receives input from S1 and thalamus (Zin-Ka-Leu, 1998; Miyachi et al., 2005) and the highly reciprocal nature of functional connections between M1 and S1 have been demonstrated in an optimum plane sensorimotor slice preparation developed by Rocco et al., (2007). Similarly, studies using voltage-sensitive dye imaging (VSD) and anterograde and retrograde tracers or viral vectors provide strong evidence that sensory input and whisker movement are related in rats (Ferezou et al., 2007) and inactivation of S1 results in altered chewing (Lin et al., 1993; Hiraba et al., 2000), muscle contractions and motor co-ordination (Rothwell et al., 1982; Hikosaka et al., 1985, Johansson and Westling, 1984). These reports suggest the role of sensory input from S1 in modulating motor output from M1. Topographical organisation of S1 was found to be similar to that of M1 (Huffman and Krubitzer, 2001) and have close association with M1 via reciprocal connections. Axonal projections of LIII of S1 (otherwise known as area 3a) have been identified to terminate throughout the cortical column of M1 (Porter 1991, 1992, 1996; Porter and Sakamoto, 1988) by performing retrograde labelling studies. These studies have also revealed LII and LV1 of M1 send projections to S1 (Porter, 1991, 1993).

Sensorimotor integration has been studied in vivo (Smith et al., 1983; Wannier et al., 1991) but this does not enable the full understanding of the pathways. However, sensorimotor slice preparation by Rocco et al., enables to investigate further on sensorimotor connections in vitro (Rocco et al., 2007). Detailed information and significance of M1 and S1 interactions were discussed in chapter 3 (section 3.3).

This chapter deals with pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of S1 and compared to delta oscillations in M1. To determine the origin of delta oscillations, various sagittal slice preparations were made (see Methods section 2.2 for details). Experiments in the first part (5.2) of this chapter was performed in LV of a sensorimotor slice (slice type A) with both regions and surroundings intact. The following section (5.3) utilised the various types of
slice preparation (as seen in Methods 2.2 section) with a view towards identifying whether M1 and S1 have their own delta rhythm generator or if one region was leading the other or if there was any thalamic dependence for rhythm generation.

Previous studies on local circuits have suggested the existence of strong excitatory inputs to LV from other layers (Weiler et al., 2008; Yu et al., 2008; Anderson et al., 2010; Hooks et al., 2011). Based on the fact that high amplitude oscillations were recorded from layer V of M1 as shown in laminar studies (section 4.2.2) in 4th chapter as well as structural similarities (Huffman and Krubitzer, 2001), all experiments in this chapter were performed in deep layer (LV) of either M1 and/or S1.
5.2 Pharmacology of delta oscillations in S1

5.2.1 Pharmacological induction of delta oscillations in LV of S1

Primary somatosensory cortex (S1) is adjacent to primary motor cortex (M1) and shares structural similarities with it. Investigations were made to examine the ability of S1 to generate delta oscillations. All recordings in this chapter are made from LV of S1 unless otherwise stated. In the presence of KA (150 nM) and (10 µM), theta and gamma oscillations were induced (see chapter 3 for details). In the intact sensorimotor slice containing M1, S1 and surrounding regions, a transition similar to that of in M1 was identified. When perfused with aCSF containing KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM), fast oscillations, theta (6-11 Hz) and gamma (30-37 Hz) gradually shifted to slow oscillations: slow theta (5-7 Hz) and beta oscillations (25-30 Hz) before high amplitude delta oscillations (2-4 Hz, ~300 µV², n=50) with a mean frequency of 3.2 ± 0.7 Hz emerged (figures 5.1, 5.2).

![Figure 5.1](image)

**Figure 5.1 Pharmacological induction and transition of theta-gamma to delta oscillations (2-4 Hz) in LV of S1**

(A) Representative extracellular voltage recordings of activity during development of delta rhythm in SCH23390 & haloperidol. Gamma (30-40 Hz), beta (25-29 Hz), theta-1 (7-14 Hz), theta-2 (5-7 Hz) and delta (1-4 Hz) oscillations (scale: 20 µV x 250 ms). (B) Power spectra of oscillatory activity during application of SCH23390 & haloperidol at 30 min (dotted line) and at 90 min (red line). Note how gamma-theta activity gradually shifted into beta and slow theta (5-7 Hz) oscillations (dotted), before a high amplitude (20-400 µV²) delta rhythm (red) emerged.
Pharmacological studies were performed using various receptor modulators. Control for each recording was normalised to 100% and in experiments of this chapter, stable delta oscillations were characterised as showing no change noticed in frequency and amplitude over 20 min period. The effect of a drug was measured just after 40 min of bath application of the drug (unless otherwise stated) which was compared to control.

**Figure 5.2 Representative typical delta oscillation in LV of S1 (2-4 Hz)**

(A) Raw data of an example typical delta oscillation recorded from LV of S1 (scale: 50 μV x 500 ms) (B) representative power spectrum of pharmacologically induced delta activity in ‘sleep’ neuromodulatory state (low dopaminergic and low cholinergic tone).
5.2.2 Cholinergic modulation of delta oscillations in LV of S1

To examine the effect of CCh was through muscarinic acetylcholine receptors, pirenzepine (PIR), an mACh antagonist was bath applied when oscillations were stable for 20 min. 10 μM of PIR significantly decreased the peak delta power to 23 ± 1% of control (normalised to 100%) suggesting a role of mACh receptors in generation of delta oscillations in LV of S1 as in M1 (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 5.3)

Figure 5.3 Muscarinic receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of pirenzepine (10 μM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 100 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) PIR (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ** p<0.01, n=8.
5.2.3 GABA\(_\text{A}\)R modulation of delta oscillations in LV of S1

To determine the involvement of inhibitory GABA\(_\text{A}\)R, a competitive GABA\(_\text{A}\)R antagonist gabazine (GBZ) and a non-competitive channel blocker picrotoxin (PTX) were bath applied. Application of GBZ at 250nM and 2.5 \(\mu\text{M}\) significantly reduced the synaptic synchronous delta activity to 36.50 ± 3% and 22 ± 5% of control respectively (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 5.4A). 5 \(\mu\text{M}\) of PTX significantly reduced the delta synchronous activity to 38 ± 5% of control (n=8, P<0.01) (figure 5.4B).

![Figure 5.4 GABA\(_\text{A}\) receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power](image)

(A) Effect of gabazine (250 nM and 2.5 \(\mu\text{M}\)) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) 250 nM, 2.5 \(\mu\text{M}\) drug application (scale: 60 \(\mu\text{V}\) vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black), after GBZ 250 nM (red) and GBZ 2.5 \(\mu\text{M}\) (dashed line) (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **p<0.01, n=8.

(B) Effect of picrotoxin (5 \(\mu\text{M}\)) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 100 \(\mu\text{V}\) vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after picrotoxin (red) (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **p<0.01, n=8.
5.2.4 iGluR modulation of delta oscillations in LV of S1

5.2.4.1 AMPAR modulation of delta oscillations

The dependence of delta oscillations on AMPAR was investigated by using SYM2206, a specific AMPAR antagonist. Application of 20 μM of SYM2206 significantly desynchronised the delta activity. It reduced the power to 49 ± 4% of control (n=8, p<0.01) (figure 5.5A).

Bath application of 25 μM CNQX, KAR/AMPAR antagonist significantly reduced the synchronous delta activity (figure 5.5B) to 40 ± 7% of control (n=8, P<0.01) revealing the role of both KA and AMPA receptors in generation of delta oscillations.

**Figure 5.5 AMPA receptor block decreases delta oscillatory power**

(A) Effect of SYM2206 (20 μM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 20 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) SYM2206 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. **p<0.01, n=8.

AMPA/kainate receptors block decreases delta oscillatory power

(B) Effect of CNQX (25 μM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) CNQX (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. *** p<0.001, n=8.
5.2.4.2 NMDAR modulation of delta oscillations

The role of NMDA receptors was tested using 2-AP5, a competitive NMDAR antagonist. 50 μM 2-AP5 did not alter the delta peak (n=8, P>0.05) (figure 5.6) suggesting generation of delta oscillations does not require NMDA receptors, as observed in M1 (see chapter 4 for details).

Figure 5.6 NMDA receptor block has no effect on delta oscillatory power

(A) Effect of 2-AP5 (50 μM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) DL-AP5 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8.

(B) Effect of MK801 (10 μM) on delta oscillations. (i) Raw data showing the changes in oscillatory activity before (black) and after (red) drug application (scale: 50 μV vs 500 ms). (ii) Representative power spectra of 60s of extracellular recording demonstrating peak responses before (black) and after (red) MK801 (iii) Bar graphs showing peak oscillatory power of oscillations before (grey) and after (red) drug application normalised to control. ns p>0.05, n=8.
5.2.5 Summary of results

Pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of S1 was summarised in table below

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug (concentration)</th>
<th>% Change of Control</th>
<th>Significance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pirenzepine (10 µM) [mACh antagonist]</td>
<td>23 ± 0.5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gabazine (250 nM, 2.5 µM) [GABAAR antagonist]</td>
<td>36 ± 3, 22 ± 5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>picrotoxin (5 µM) [GABAAR antagonist]</td>
<td>38 ± 5</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYM2206 (20 µM) [AMPAR antagonist]</td>
<td>49 ± 4</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNQX (25 µM) [KA/AMPAR antagonist]</td>
<td>40 ± 7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP-5 (50 µM) [NMDAR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MK 801 (10 µM) [NMDAR antagonist]</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.1 Pharmacology of delta oscillations in LV of S1

Peak power changes after application of various receptor modulators is represented as mean ± SEM when compared to control (normalised to 100%). N= number of recordings (obtained from 3 different animals), significance: ns p>0.05, * p<0.05, **p<0.01, ***p<0.001.
5.3 M1-S1 interactions at delta frequency

In order to study interactions between M1 and S1, I used a series of sagittal brain slice preparations designated as slice type A-F, detailed in Methods (section 2.2).

5.3.1 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type A

It was observed in the experiments of pharmacological induction of delta oscillations in the presence of KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and haloperidol (10 µM) in LV of M1 and S1 that delta oscillations in S1 were time delayed to that of M1. Mean peak power of delta oscillations were plotted against time both in M1 and S1. This revealed a significant time delay of 19 ± 3 min in incidence of delta oscillations in S1 (n=8, p<0.01). A linear regression graph suggested that intercepts were different when compared M1 with S1 delta mean peak suggesting a significant delay in elevation (n=8, p<0.001) (figure 5.7).

Figure 5.7 Development of delta oscillations in S1 is significantly time delayed with respect to delta in M1 in slice type A

(A) A representative power spectrum representing the transition of fast oscillations (black) to slow oscillations (dotted line) and to delta (red) oscillations in LV of M1 (B) in S1 (C) graph comparing the mean delay in incidence of delta oscillations in M1 (black) to that of S1 (red) (D) a linear regression graph showing significant difference in y-intercept (elevation) between M1 (black) and S1 (red) with slopes being almost equal (n=8, p<0.01, p<0.001).
To further investigate this, correlation analysis was conducted in various slice types (refer methods section). In slice type A, Auto-correlation enabled to identify the signal as delta (2-4 Hz) frequency in a given time (figures 5.8 A-B). Good correlation (correlation coefficient =0.5) of delta oscillations also existed between M1 and S1. However, delta oscillations in S1 were found to be phase lagged by 2.5 ± 0.6 ms with reference to M1 whilst delta in M1 was preceded by 2.4 ± 0.4 ms with reference to S1 (figures 5.8 C-D) suggesting the origin of delta oscillations to be M1.

![Figure 5.8](image)

**Figure 5.8 LV of M1 is the place of origin of the delta frequency activity in slice type A**

(A) auto-correlation analysis of delta oscillations in M1 (B) in S1 (C) cross-correlation between M1/M1 (black) and S1/M1 (red) (D) cross-correlation between M1/M1(black) and M1/S1 (red). Red dashed line represents the deviation from zero (black dashed line).
5.3.2 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type B

To further investigate if the time delay in incidence and phase delay in correlation studies of delta in S1 suggested that M1 to be the origin, a cut was made between two regions. In slice type B, it was noticed that delta oscillations emerged in M1 but not in S1 in the presence of KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM). Auto correlation revealed the oscillations to be in delta range (2-4 Hz) in M1 but theta range (6-11 Hz) in S1 suggesting there is no local delta rhythm generator in S1 (figure 5.9 A-D).

Figure 5.9 M1 drives the oscillatory activity at delta frequency in S1

(A) A representative power spectrum representing the transition of fast oscillations (black) to slow oscillations (dotted line) and to delta (red) oscillations in LV of M1 (B) An example power spectrum showing theta and gamma oscillations in the presence of KA and CCh (black) and in the presence of SCH+HAL (red) (C) correlation analysis of delta oscillations within M1 (D) correlation analysis revealed theta oscillations in S1. Note: there is no delta in S1 in this slice type.
5.3.3 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type C

To examine if M1 solely can generate delta oscillations, slice type C was used. In this type of slice delta was induced with a high power in the presence of KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM) which were stable for 2-3hrs. Auto and cross correlation suggested that the frequency was in delta range and a good correlation exists within two electrodes placed slightly apart in the same slice (correlation coefficient=0.7).

![Figure 5.10](image)

**Figure 5.10 LV of M1 is the place origin of delta oscillations in slice type C**

(A) A representative power spectrum of typical delta oscillation (4 Hz) in LV of M1 (B) auto and cross correlation analysis of delta oscillations in M1 within LV of single slice.
5.3.4 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type D

Experiments were performed on slice type D, however, there was no delta transition in the S1 only slice type in the presence KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM). Correlation analysis revealed theta frequency range (6-11) suggesting delta oscillations were driven by M1 in intact slice as shown above (figure 5.11).

![Figure 5.11 No transition to delta oscillations was found in S1 slice without M1 in slice type D.](image)

(A) An example power spectrum showing theta and gamma oscillations in the presence of KA and CCh (black) and in the presence of SCH+HAL (red). (B) Correlation analysis revealed theta oscillations within S1. Note: there is no delta oscillations.
5.3.5 Correlation studies of delta oscillations in slice type E

To investigate if adjacent regions (other than M1 and S1) contribution is necessary for pharmacological induction of delta oscillations in M1 and S1, experiments were performed in slice type E (micro slice) in which both M1 and S1 are collectively isolated from neighbouring regions (see Methods section for details). In the presence KA (150 nM), CCh (2 µM), SCH23390 (10 µM) and Haloperidol (10 µM) delta oscillations were reliably induced both in M1 and S1 with again a slight delay in S1. However, the power and stability (1 hr) was much less than that was noticed in intact slices. This is probably because of the many cuts that were made to obtain micro slice. Mean peak power was $40 \pm 8 \mu V^2$ and $25 \pm 10 \mu V^2$ in M1 and S1 respectively. A good correlation existed (correlation coefficient=0.3) between two regions with a phase lag of $2.3 \pm 0.8$ ms in S1 with reference to M1 (figure 5.12).
Figure 5.12 LV of M1 is the origin of delta oscillations and drives the activity in S1 in slice type E

(A) An example power spectrum of delta oscillations in LV of M1 (B) in S1 (C) auto-correlation analysis of delta oscillations in M1 and in (D) S1. (E) cross-correlation analysis between M1/M1 (black) and S1/M1 (red) (F) cross correlation analysis between M1/M1 (black) and M1/S1 (red). Red dashed line represents the deviation from zero (black dashed line).
5.4 Discussion

5.4.1 Mechanism of delta oscillations in S1

No spontaneous activity was observed when recorded in S1 similar to that of in M1 and gamma oscillations were induced upon the application of KA and CCh. Interactions between M1 and S1 at theta and gamma frequency were detailed in chapter 3. Persistent delta oscillations were induced in LV of S1 by maintaining a low cholinergic and low dopaminergic tone as this was the precondition to induce delta in M1 (section 4.1). Pharmacology performed revealed the dependence of delta oscillations in S1 are dependent on GABAR, AMPAR, mAChR and KAR. Similar pharmacological profile to that of M1 was identified in S1 probably because M1 drives S1 at this frequency. AMPAR contribute to overall excitation of the cells, CCh to activate the cells and GABAR to the set the frequency similar to that of gamma oscillations except that delta are found independent of NMDAR both in M1 and S1. Based on the suggestion that cortical delta oscillations are generated in a use-dependent manner, in that the cortical circuits that are active during awake states generate these oscillations in the succeeding sleep (Kattler et al., 1994; Huber et al., 2004) and in a region specific way, implying a self-organising property of local neuronal networks (Krueger and Oba’i, 1993; Vassalli and Dijk, 2009; Vyazovskiy et al., 2011) reflecting previously prevalent gamma oscillations then become delta oscillations. However, delta oscillations in S1 showed a significant delay in occurrence which lead to further cut/isolated region studies (discussed below).

5.4.2 M1 and S1 interactions

Functional connectivity between M1 and S1 has been reported. Intra-cortical micro stimulation (ICMS) of S1 resulted in short latency and mono-synaptic EPSPs in cells that were present in M1 (Kosar et al., 1985). Experiments described above showed that M1 and S1 interactions facilitated the expression of delta in both regions, with M1 providing the drive and activity in S1 following, as evidenced by the clear delay between delta induction in S1 when compared to M1 and the similarity of the S1 pharmacology to that in M1. Auto-correlation studies in slice type A, reflected a high correlation within the region in a time series and revealed the signal obtained to be in delta frequency range. However, cross-correlation studies revealed a phase lag in S1 when compared to M1 suggesting M1 to be a leading signal. This is in contrast to that of theta and gamma oscillations and beta oscillations in same regions. In an intact slice (slice type A), S1 seems to be the leading signal for both theta and gamma oscillations as there was a lag in M1 with reference to S1 (section 3.3 for details). Although two signals were in near synchrony at beta frequency it was observed that desynchronisation first occurred in S1 and then followed by M1 upon the application of zolpidem (Prokic, 2011). It was reported that there were direct connections
between the two regions in rodents and cats (Asunama et al., 1982, Donoghue and Parham, 1983; Porter and Sakamoto, 1988, Izraeli and Porter, 1995). To further explore this, a cut was made carefully between two regions and it was evident from the results obtained that M1 is be the source of origin of delta rhythm, since there is no occurrence of delta oscillations in S1 when separated from M1 by a cut. However, it was suspected that the origin of delta oscillations in M1 did involve neighbouring regions. It has been established that there are two pathways between S1 and M1 (intra-cortical) with one being direct and the other indirect via thalamus (Kaneko, 1994a, 1994b). To address this issue, a slice preparation (slice type C) with only M1, isolated from surrounding regions including S1 was recorded based on the fact that LTP in M1 of cats is induced by stimulation of M1 alone (Keller et al., 1990) independent on S1. This type of slice has enabled delta induction proving M1 as the source of origin. Then recordings were made from slice type D in which only S1 was isolated, no activity was identified in contrast to that theta and gamma oscillations, as theta and gamma oscillations were induced in slice type C and D reflecting individual and independent rhythm generators at these frequencies (section 3.3 for details). Furthermore, a micro slice (slice type E) was prepared in which both M1 and S1 are collectively isolated from surrounding regions. Recordings from this type of slice has induced delta oscillations in both oscillations but the power was observed to be much lower compared to slice type A and also they were identified to be not persistent suggesting loss or damage of network connectivity due to several cuts made around the regions. It was possible to speculate that loss of M2 in this slice type could form the ground for this instability as there was evidence that optogenetic inhibition of inputs from M2 to M1/S1 had reduced the activity in behaving mice (Manita et al., 2015). The role of M2 in delta oscillation generation was not explored in our study due to practical limitations.

The origin of delta oscillations from deep layers of M1 could mean that the retrograde and anterograde connections between two regions do not contribute to initiation of deep sleep states because M1 on its own had enabled the generation of delta oscillations. However, these connections may have a role in maintenance of delta oscillations since S1 followed M1 with a significant delay in intact slices (types A and E). The neuronal populations that were recruited for delta rhythm generation might be just resident in M1 and not in S1. For instance, betz cells were observed in layer V of M1 (Betz, 1894). These cells are unique in their morphology and may appear as both pyramidal and interneurons (Braak, 1976). Also, this fits with the idea of increasing power towards frontal parts of the brain (Werth et al., 1997; Finelli et al., 2001). Based on this it is reasonable to say that M1 is the source of origin for delta oscillations. However, S1 seems to be a potential source of theta and gamma frequency, although both M1 and S1 have individual rhythm generators. Given that delta oscillations are assumed to be sub served by previously active gamma oscillations (Kattler
et al., 1994; Huber et al., 2004) in M1 however, this is not the case for S1 as it does not enable delta generation on an isolated slice preparation.

Nevertheless, further histological and immuno-labelling studies to determine the types of cells and receptors that were involved in the generation of delta oscillations and functional connectivity between two regions would be beneficial to further address this issue. Preparing slices in different plane other than sagittal would preserve thalamus and/or M2, S2 besides M1 and S1 and would provide an opportunity to investigate the influence of thalamus (if any) in delta rhythm generation since cells present across all layers in M1 have been implicated in long-range projections (Peter and Jones, 1984).

5.5 Final conclusions

Delta oscillations in S1 are dependent on both inhibitory and excitatory networks similar to that of in M1 and in line with pharmacology of gamma oscillations suggesting previously prevalent gamma oscillations then become delta oscillation due to changes in concentrations of neuromodulators. A significant time delay in occurrence and phase lag that was observed in correlation studies performed in various slice preparations revealed M1 as the rhythm generator. Inability of S1 to generate delta oscillations on its own suggests that S1 follows M1 at delta frequency in intact slice.
6. Dopamine augments an inward current in fast spiking interneurons in layer V of primary motor cortex
6.1 Introduction

6.1.1 Dopamine (DA)

In the current study, network activity in primary motor cortex (M1) has been shown to be powerfully modulated by DAR (see chapter 3) (Alexander et al., 1986; Ozkan et al., 2017; Johnson et al., 2017). These actions of dopamine almost certainly depend on DAR present within M1 itself. M1 and PFC (pre-frontal cortex) show similar laminar organisation of receptors (although M1 has fewer DAR than PFC (Lidow et al., 1989)) and D1-like DR are more abundant than D2-like DR in rat cortex (Boyson et al., 1986). The laminar distribution of both D1-like and D2-like receptors is found to correspond to the dopaminergic terminals in M1 which are predominantly in deep layers (LV and LVl) (Martes et al., 1985; Dawson et al., 1986; Descaries et al. 1987; Raghanti et al., 2008; Vitrac et al., 2014). Many studies have studied the differential effects of DA on firing rate in various regions such as ventrobasal thalamus (Munsch et al., 2005; Yague et al., 2013) and was shown that DA did not affect action potential firing evoked by somatic current injection (Zhou and Hablitz, 1999; Gonzalez-Islas and Hablitz, 2001). Some studies previously have indicated that in STN, firing rate of neurons was augmented upon DA administration (Mintz et al., 1986; Kreiss et al., 1996; Tofighy et al., 2003; Cragg et al., 2004; Loucif et al., 2008). While some studies suggest that DA mediated depolarisation in STN was via D2-like DR (Zhu et al., 2002; Tofighy et al., 2003), others suggest via D1-like DAR (Baufreton et al., 2003). DA regulation of various voltage-gated channels may reflect these diverse effects but firing rate has not been measured in our study.

6.1.2 Interneurons (IN)

Different types of interneurons with distinctive features have been identified in neocortex (Deuchars and Thomson, 1996; Thomson et al., 1996; Tamas et al., 1997; Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997; Cauli et al., 1997) and hippocampus (Halasy et al., 1996; Miles et al., 1996; Klausberger et al., 2003, 2005). Although IN make up only a subset (10-20%) of the whole cell population (Benardo and Wong, 1995), they play a critical role in oscillatory neuronal activity in cortex (McBain and Fisahn, 2001). Post-synaptic pyramidal neurons that are present in peri-somatic region are the target sites for most FS cells in sensory and primary motor cortices (Kawaguchi and Kubota, 1997; Cauli et al., 1997; Yamawaki et al., 2008; Prokic et al., 2015). The peri-somatic region is defined as “that part of the plasma membrane including the proximal dendrites, the cell body and the axon initial segment” (Szabo et al., 2010). These FS cells are thought to regulate overall pyramidal activity (Freund and Katona, 2007) due to their ability to induce IPSCs with faster kinetics in conditions where excitatory synaptic inputs are abolished (Miles, 1990; Freund and Katona, 2007). FS cells that are characterised by rapid IPSC kinetics are suggested to be crucial for maintaining network
activity by regulating coherence and frequency in M1 (Bartos et al., 2001, 2002; Yamawaki et al., 2008; Prokic et al., 2015).

6.1.3 DA and interneurons

DA effects on FS interneurons have been shown to be mediated by PKA-dependent suppression of leak, inward rectifying, and depolarisation-activated K+ channels (Gorelova et al., 2002) and amplification of depolarising currents mediated by HCN channels (Gorelova et al., 2002; Trantham-Davidson et al., 2008; Wu and Hablitz, 2005). Additionally, many reports have indicated that DA modulates GABA\(_\text{A}\)R. Pyramidal neurons localised in PFC have shown reduction in IPSCs via downregulation of D4 surface receptors (Seamans et al., 2001; Wang et al., 2002; Graziane et al., 2009). Additionally, recent studies have indicated that DA modulates tonic currents in various regions of brain (Aman et al., 2007; Yague et al., 2013; Liang et al., 2014) and may directly inhibit GABA\(_\text{A}\)R (Hoerbelt et al., 2015). These novel activities of DA may impel new definitions of dopaminergic signalling in the brain. Distinct types of cells express DAR with different combinations across the cortical layers (Wang et al., 2006). DA was reported to modulate the intrinsic excitability of both pyramidal cells and interneurons (reviews Seamans and Yang, 2004; Tritsch and Sabatini, 2012). However, the modulatory effects on isolated cells and individual currents mediated by DA are often unclear due to complexity of network in which these cells are embedded, as well as the various types of receptors and signalling mechanisms.

Here, we have determined to investigate the effect of DA on pyramidal cells and FS interneurons in LV of M1 slices using whole-cell voltage clamp recordings. FS cells were identified based on the morphological features as described by Prokic et al., (2015), based upon deep layer Betz cell-FS cell pairing.
6.2 Results

All the experiments in this chapter are whole cell, voltage clamp recordings with a holding current of -70 mV performed in layer V of M1 unless otherwise indicated. FS interneurons and pyramidal neurons were patched and were identified by their shape and size. Slice type F (refer methods section) was used in these experiments. With the internal solution used in the experiments (see methods section for full composition), the reversal potential of Cl (E_{Cl}) was 0 mV; therefore, GABA_A receptor-mediated currents (IPSCs) appeared inward as shown in results below. Tonic/inward current is measured by the change in the baseline after the drug application in relation to control. Whereas, phasic current was measured by changes in the amplitude and time difference of IPSCs (IEI) before and after drug application.

6.2.1 GABAergic modulation of tonic and phasic currents in FS cells

To investigate the role of GABAR in tonic and phasic inhibition in FS cells of LV of M1, bicuculline (Bic, 20 µM) a competitive GABA_AR antagonist was bath applied. After drug application, both tonic and phasic components of inhibitory activity in FS cells were abolished suggesting constitutively active GABAergic inhibition in interneurons of LV of M1. Bic significantly decreased the holding current by 36.3 ± 6 pA (n=5, p<0.01). Mean amplitude change was found to be 61.5 ± 2 pA and 1.71 ± 0.1 pA in control and after application of Bic respectively, (n=5, p<0.01) whilst the mean inter event interval (IEI) increased from 187.3 ± 19 ms to 2511.2 ± 403 ms (n=5, p<0.05) (figures 6.1, 6.2) suggesting the reduction in both I_{tonic} and I_{phasic}.
Figure 6.1 Bicuculline (Bic 20 µM) decreases tonic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of Bic (scale: 50 pA, 1 min). Black horizontal line indicates the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) $I_{\text{tonic}}$ before and after Bic application of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of $I_{\text{tonic}}$ before (grey) and after (red) drug application (n=5, p<0.01).
Figure 6.2 Bicuculline (Bic 20 μM) decreases phasic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS cell demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P<0.001) (E) bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.001).
In order to confirm the actions of Bic were mediated solely by the GABAA-R, we next examined the effects of picrotoxin (PTX), a non-competitive channel blocker GABAA-R which acts by preventing the entry of Cl⁻ ions into the neuron. PTX abolished both $I_{\text{tonic}}$ and $I_{\text{phasic}}$ confirming GABA receptors significant role in this constitutively active tonic and phasic currents in FS cells in LV of M1. Mean decrease in holding current by PTX was 20 ± 6 pA (n=5, p<0.01). Decrease in the mean amplitude was found to be 46.5 ± 5 pA and 1.81 ± 0.2 pA (n=5, p<0.01) and mean increase in IEI 137 ± 4 to 1790 ±214 (n=5, p>0.05, p<0.001 in control and in the presence of PTX respectively (figures 6.3, 6.4).

**Figure 6.3 Picrotoxin (PTX 50 µM) decreases tonic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1**

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of PTX (scale: 100 pA, 1 min). Black horizontal line indicates the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) $I_{\text{tonic}}$ before and after PTX application of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of $I_{\text{tonic}}$ before (grey) and after (red) drug application (n=5, p<0.01).
Figure 6.4 Picrotoxin (PTX 50 µM) decreases phasic inhibitory current in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS cell demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P<0.001) (E) bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.001).
6.2.2 Dopaminergic modulation of currents in FS cells

To determine the role of dopamine receptors on holding current (-70 mV), dopamine (DA) 30 µM was bath applied. DA induced a slow inward current (I_{DA}) which was reversed less than half upon wash. Mean increase in the holding current was -32 ± 11 pA from the baseline (n=5, p<0.05, p<0.01) in the presence of DA and was reduced to -11.5 ± 5 pA in wash (n=5, p<0.05). DA has shown no effect on both amplitude (41.7 ± 2 vs 39.4 ± 2) and IEI (174.4 ±4 vs 200 ± 5) of IPSCS (figure 6.5, 6.6).

**Figure 6.5** Dopamine (DA 30 µM) induces an inward current (I_{DA}) in FS interneurons

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of DA (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) black horizontal lines indicates the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) I_{DA} before and after wash of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of I_{DA} before (grey) and after (red) wash (n=5, p<0.01, p<0.05).
Figure 6.6 Dopamine (DA 30 µM) has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). (E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
To investigate whether $I_{DA}$ was mediated by GABA$_A$R, Bic (20 µM) and PTX (50 µM) were bath applied. The holding current was reduced upon application of either Bic or PTX. Mean $I_{DA}$ of $-34 \pm 7$ pA was reduced to $-21 \pm 3$ pA and $-18 \pm 2$ pA (when Bic ($n=5$, $p<0.01$) and PTX ($n=5$, $p<0.05$) were bath applied respectively) from baseline (control) (figures 6.7, 6.8).

**Figure 6.7 Bic decreased the holding current of $I_{DA}$ in FS cells**

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of Bic (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) on $I_{DA}$. Black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) $I_{DA}$ before and after Bic of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of $I_{DA}$ before (grey) and after (red) application of Bic ($n=5$, $p<0.01$, $p<0.01$).
Figure 6.8 PTX reduced the holding current of $I_{DA}$ in FS cells

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of PTX (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) on $I_{DA}$. Black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) $I_{DA}$ before and after PTX of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of $I_{DA}$ before (grey) and after (red) application of PTX (n=5, p<0.05, p<0.05).
The experiments with Bic and PTX suggested a significant component (≥ 20 pA) of I_{DA} was not mediated by GABA_{A}R. To confirm this, Bic, was applied prior to DA to examine if DA still induced inward current or increased the holding current in the presence of the GABA_{A}R blockade. It was observed that DA still induced an inward current. Under these conditions, Bic reduced the holding current by 26.2 ± 1 pA. From this new baseline, DA induce a current (I_{DA}) of 13 ± 1 pA (n=5, p<0.01, p<0.05) confirming there is a non-GABAergic component in I_{DA} (figures 6.9).

Figure 6.9 I_{DA} was induced in FS interneurons in the presence of Bic

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of I_{DA} in the presence of Bic (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) on I_{DA}. Black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) I_{DA} before and after DA in the presence of Bic in individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of I_{DA} before (grey) and after (red) application DA in the presence of Bic (n=5, p<0.05, p<0.01).
Further investigations were made to uncover the role of D1 receptors $I_{DA}$. D1 agonist, SKF38393 (10 µM) and antagonist, SCH23390, (2 µM) were bath applied. Both SKF38393 and SCH23390 have no effect on $I_{\text{phasic}}$, as the amplitude (34 ± 1 vs 36 ± 1; 33.2 ± 0.9 vs 30.3 ± 1.3) and IEI (227.6 ± 14 vs 231 ± 20; 237± 6.8 vs 250 ± 24) respectively, did not show any significant difference (figure 6.10, 6.11, 6.12). Please note that the raw data trace below implies a small change in holding current as well as IPSC amplitude but this was not found significant when data were pooled (n=5, p>0.05).

**Figure 6.10** D1 agonist and antagonist does not affect holding current in FS interneurons

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of D1R modulators (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) black horizontal lines indicates the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) Effect of D1R modulators on holding current of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of inward current in the presence of SKF38393 (grey) and SCH23390 (red) (n=5, p<0.01, p<0.05).
Figure 6.11 D1R agonist, SKF38390 has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
Figure 6.12 D1R antagonist, SCH23390 has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). (E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
Since the role of D1 agonist and antagonist was found to be insignificant, the role of D2 receptors were investigated. D2 agonist, quinpirole (10 µM) when bath applied induced an inward current by increasing holding current by -38 ± 6 pA (n=5, p<0.01) whilst D2 antagonist significantly decreased the holding current by -13 ± 8 of control (n=5, p<0.01). Both quinpirole and sulphiride have shown no contributions to \( I_{\text{phasic}} \) as the amplitude (38 ± 0.9 vs 30 ± 1.3; 38 ± 1.8 vs 34.5 ± 5) and IEI (142 ± 4.7 vs 161 ± 5.7; 150 ± 5.4 vs 160 ± 5.9) respectively, did not show any significant differences (figures 6.13, 6.14, and 6.15).

**Figure 6.13 Quinpirole increased the holding current whilst sulphiride decreased it in FS interneurons**

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of D2R modulators (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) black horizontal lines indicates the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) Effect of D2R modulators on holding current of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of inward current in the presence of quinpirole (grey) and sulphiride (red) (n=5, p<0.01, p<0.05).
Figure 6.14 D2R agonist, quinpirole has shown no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). (E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
Figure 6.15 D2R antagonist, sulpiride has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). (E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
6.2.3 $I_h$ current modulation of $I_{DA}$ in FS cells in LV of M1

$I_{DA}$ might be due to the activation of several types of ion channel, including TRP channels, $I_h$ or tonic NMDAR currents besides D2-like DR. In order to investigate this, we first focused on $I_h$. To investigate if $I_{DA}$ was mediated via hyperpolarising current ($I_h$) of HCN channels, ZD7288 (30 µM), an $I_h$ blocker was bath applied as soon as the slice was placed on the recording chamber. In the presence of ZD7288, DA induced inward current by increasing the holding current by $-48 \pm 20$ pA. Subsequent addition of Bic decreased the holding current (n=5, p<0.05, p<0.01) suggesting $I_{DA}$ was $I_h$ independent (figure 6.16).

![Figure 6.16](image)

**Figure 6.16** $I_{DA}$ in FS interneurons was independent of $I_h$ channels

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect of ZD7288 on $I_{DA}$ (scale: 100 pA, 10 min). Black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) $I_{DA}$ before and after Bic of individual FS cells. (C) Pooled data of $I_{DA}$ before (grey) and after (red) application of Bic (n=5, p<0.01, p<0.01) in the presence of $I_h$ channel blocker.
6.2.4 TRPC modulation of tonic and phasic currents in FS cells

Next, to uncover if TRP channels were involved in $I_{DA}$, TRP channel antagonists 2-APB and SKF96365 were bath applied. Both drugs significantly decreased the holding current that was increased by DA. Mean amplitude of $-26.4 \pm 2$ pA and $-27.2 \pm 7$ pA were reduced to $-0.65 \pm 1.8$ pA and $1 \pm 0.3$ pA in the presence of 2-ABP and SKF96365 respectively, $n=5$, $p<0.01$ (figures 6.17, 6.19). However, none of them showed significant effect on $I_{phasic}$ ($n=5$, $p>0.05$) (figures 6.18, 6.20). Please note that in the presence of TRPC antagonist holding current was reduced slightly beyond baseline (control).

Figure 6.17 Blockade of TRP channels by 2-ABP (100 µM) decrease holding current slightly beyond control.

(A) Raw data of representative voltage clamp demonstrating the effect of SKF96365 on $I_{DA}$ (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative shift from baseline (control). (B) Line graph showing the effect of DA and SKF96365 on holding current of individual FS cells. (C) Bar graph representing pooled data of $I_{DA}$ in control (black), DA (red), SKF96365 (grey) ($n=5$, $p<0.01$).
Figure 6.18 2-ABP has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). (E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
Figure 6.19 Blockade of TRP channels by SKF96365 (100 µM) decreases holding current slightly beyond baseline.

(A) Raw data of representative voltage clamp demonstrating the effect of SKF96365 on $I_{DA}$ (scale: 100 pA, 10 min) black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative shift from baseline (control). (B) Line graph showing the effect of DA and SKF96365 on holding current of individual FS cells. (C) Bar graph representing pooled data of $I_{DA}$ in control (black), DA (red), SKF96365 (grey) (n=5, p<0.01).
Figure 6.20 TRPC channel antagonist, SKF96365 has no effect on phasic inhibition in FS interneurons in LV of M1

(A) (B) Representative voltage clamp recording from a FS interneuron demonstrating IPSCs before (left) and after (right) drug application (scale: 100 pA, 200 ms) (C) bar graph (D) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on amplitude (n=5, P>0.05). (E) Bar graph (F) cumulative probability plot showing the effect of drug on inter event interval (IEI) (n=5, p>0.05).
As of now, the results above showed that DA induced an inward current in FS cells. $I_{DA}$ was induced even in the presence of Bic but much smaller than with DA on its own. On the other hand, TRPC channel antagonist have shown a decrease in $I_{DA}$ almost to the level of baseline suggesting a significant role in $I_{DA}$. Further investigation was made to determine if by blocking both GABAR and TRPC channels would decrease the holding current beyond baseline. When slices were treated with both SKF96365 (100 µM) and Bic (20 µM), $I_{DA}$ was reversed more than 100% (control: $-32 \pm 9$ pA to $33 \pm 6$ pA) which was significantly beyond control ($n = 5$, $p<0.01$ figure 6.21). This may suggest that all the tonic currents in FS cells are attributed to GABAR and DAR.

Figure 6.21 SKF96365 and Bic decreases holding current much beyond the baseline in FS cells.

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording demonstrating the effect SKF96365+Bic on $I_{DA}$. Black horizontal lines indicate the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) Line graph indicating $I_{DA}$ in presence of SKF96365+Bic of individual FS cells. (C) Bar graph representing pooled data of $I_{DA}$ in control (black), DA (red), SKF96365+Bic (grey) ($n=5$, $p<0.01$)
6.2.5 Effect of DA on holding current of pyramidal cells in LV of M1.

When treated slices with Bic (20 µM), pyramidal cells showed reduction in $I_{\text{tonic}}$ and $I_{\text{phasic}}$. Mean $I_{\text{tonic}}$ was $15 \pm 0.8$ pA ($n=5$, $p<0.01$). DA, however, did not show any influence on holding current in pyramidal cells ($n=5$, $p>0.05$) (figure 6.22).

Figure 6.22 DA has no effect on holding current in pyramidal neurons in LV of M1

(A) Representative voltage clamp recording from a pyramidal cell demonstrating the effect of DA and Bic (scale: 20 pA, 2 min) black horizontal line indicates the presence of drug in bath and dotted line indicates the relative current shift from baseline (control). (B) Effect of DA and Bic on holding current of individual pyramidal cells (C) pooled data of change in holding current before (grey) and after (red, black) drugs application ($n=5$, $p>0.05$ $p<0.01$).
6.3 Discussion

6.3.1 $I_{\text{tonic}}$ and $I_{\text{phasic}}$ in FS cells and pyramidal cells in LV of M1

The tonic activation of GABA$\alpha$R was first reported in the voltage clamp recordings performed in cerebellar granule cells of rat (Kaneda et al., 1995). In their study, GABA$\alpha$R antagonists, Bic and GBZ, abolished spontaneous IPSCs as well as decreased the holding current, which was used to clamp the cell at a given membrane potential. This holding current reduction could reflect the reduction of number of open receptors (Kaneda et al., 1995; Brickley et al., 1996; Tia et al., 1996; Wall and Usowicz, 1997). Several studies have shown $I_{\text{tonic}}$ in several regions of brain such as: granule cells of dentate gyrus (Nusser and Mody, 2002), pyramidal neurons in LV of somatosensory cortex (Yamada et al., 2004), thalamocortical relay neurons of the ventral basal complex (Porcello et al., 2003), pyramidal neurons in CA1 (Bai et al., 2001) and certain interneurons in CA1 (Semyanov et al., 2003).

Phasic receptor activation is the transient mode of GABA exposure to postsynaptic receptors which could indicate fast diffusion away from release site (Overstreet et al., 2003). Effective functioning of GABA$\alpha$R requires binding of two GABA molecules (Baumann et al., 2003) and the short dwell time may imply that not all the postsynaptic receptors are being occupied however, postsynaptic GABAR saturation may be observed in certain synapses. The occupancy extent varies with different synapses on different neurons and may even vary at synapses on a single neuron (Frerking et al., 1996; Nusser et al., 1997; Perrais et al., 1999; Hajes et al., 2000; Mozrzyymas et al. 2003). Phasic activation depends on various factors such as vesicle size and the amount of GABA in them, vesicle fusion type, synaptic cleft geometry, number and arrangement of GABA transporters. Governing time course and peak GABA concentration has enabled to study the occupancy as well as the channel opening, based on which kinetic properties of phasic receptor activation were established (Weiss et al., 1989; Twyman et al., 1990; Jones et al., 1995; Jayaraman et al., 1999; Haas et al., 1995; Burkat et al., 2001).

FS cells in LV of M1 at holding current -70 mV exhibited a constitutively active $I_{\text{tonic}}$ and $I_{\text{phasic}}$ when GABA$\alpha$R antagonist, Bic, was bath applied. Since Bic is a competitive antagonist (Andrews and Johnston, 1979), PTX, a non-competitive antagonist (Krishek et al., 1996) which was known to block the pore of these ligand gated channels (Krishek et al., 1996; Thompson et al., 2010) was bath applied and revealed active $I_{\text{tonic}}$ and $I_{\text{phasic}}$ similar to that of Bic. We found that $I_{\text{tonic}}$ in FS cells was found much higher than that was observed in pyramidal cells without any externally applied GABA (Scimemi et al., 2005) due to the differential regulation of GABA uptake as demonstrated in other studies (Semyanov et al., 2003; Prokic et al., 2015).
6.3.2 DA induces an inward current (I_{DA}) possibly mediated by D2-like receptors

Bath application of DA has induced an inward current in FS cells. The holding current of I_{DA} was reduced to a little extent on wash. 30 µM of DA was used throughout the experiments as this concentration has shown a maximum response in previous studies (Tofighy et al., 2003; Loucif et al., 2008). Initially DA was co-applied with ascorbic acid (AA) to prevent DA oxidation. 100 µM of AA was used given that this concentration does not affect IPSC kinetics (Yague et al., 2013). However, AA often damaged the cell in our study and hence, was not applied in subsequent experiments. Oxidation of DA was identified by discolouration of the perfusing aCSF after 50 min of DA application. Since the time periods used in our study were less than the time required for DA oxidation, it was assumed that the inward current was mediated by DA prior to conversion into quinones and free radicals that causes neurotoxicity (Sulzer and Zecca, 2000). This effect of DA on holding current contrasted with the work in ventrobasal thalamus (VB) of Wistar rats in which the D2R agonist quinpirole and the selective D4 agonist PD-168,077 strongly decreased GABA_{A}R mediated inward current while D1R activation remained ineffective (Yague et al., 2013) which could mean the DA action is mediated by distinct mechanisms in various regions of brain.

Application of Bic showed partial reduction in I_{DA}. It is noteworthy that I_{tonic} revealed by Bic in the experiments where DA was pre-applied was significantly smaller than in control suggesting the possible involvement of GABAergic as well as non-GABAergic component in I_{DA}. Indeed, I_{DA} was induced in the presence of GABA_{A}R antagonist, Bic but I_{DA} was much smaller in this case suggesting the involvement of GABAergic component in I_{DA}. Blocking GABAergic transmission by GABA_{A}R antagonist and blocking glutamatergic transmission by blocking KAR, AMPAR and NMDAR using CNQX and 2-AP5 (data not shown) had no effect on I_{DA} reflecting the independency of synaptic transmission but a direct postsynaptic effect. IEM 1460 is known to block voltage dependent AMPAR, selective of GluA2 subunit lacking which are calcium permeable (Buldakova et al., 1999). This compound has shown a selective block on synaptic excitation of FS interneurons but not medium spiny pyramidal neuron in mouse striatum (Gittis et al., 2011) suggesting improvement in inhibitory functions. Therefore, all experiments were carried out with IEM 1460 in the internal solution (see methods for full composition).

To determine the involvement of receptor subtype mechanisms in I_{DA}, D1- and D2- like DR specific agonists and antagonists were bath applied. Interestingly, SKF38393 and subsequent application of SCH23390 did not show any significant effect on holding current. In contrast, quinpirole, a non-selective D2 like DAR agonist that binds to both D2 and D3 receptors (Seeman and Van Tol, 1994) mimicked the effect of DA suggesting the actions of DA via D2 like receptors. To further confirm this, a non-selective D2 like receptor antagonist, sulpiride, which binds equally to both D2 and D3 receptors was administered (Seeman and
Van Tol, 1994). Sulpiride showed a significant reversal of $I_{\text{quinpirole}}$ suggesting a major role of D2-like DAR in $I_{\text{DA}}$ in accordance with previous studies that reported that DA induced a slow membrane depolarisation or an inward current mediated via D2-like DAR in several other brain regions (Uchimura et al., 1986; Yang et al., 1991; Munsch et al., 2005).

Several in vitro studies reported that DA enhances the intrinsic excitability of pyramidal neurons in PFC by decreasing the resting membrane potential or by elevating a long lasting increase in number of action potentials via depolarisation in conditions where synaptic contributions were eliminated by pharmacological manipulations (Penit-Soria et al., 1987; Yang and Seamans, 1996; Shi et al., 1997; Ceci et al., 1999; Lavin and Grace, 2001; Gulledge and Jaffe, 2001; Gao and Goldman-Rakic, 2003; Gulledge and Stuart, 2003; Wang and Goldman-Rakic, 2004; Kroener et al., 2009; Moore et al., 2011). One of the prominent effects of DA on pyramidal neurons is to increase in the frequency of spontaneous IPSCs and IPSPs indicating a net increase in GABAergic interneuron spiking activity mainly from PV-expressing FS basket and chandelier cells (Gulledge and Jaffe, 2001; Kröner et al., 2007; Penit-Soria et al., 1987; Seamans et al., 2001b; Zhou and Hablitz, 1999). In vitro studies have suggested that D1-like DR induce depolarisation and increased excitability of FS interneurons in PFC slices (Gao and Goldman-Rakic, 2003; Gao et al., 2003; Gorelova et al., 2002; Kröner et al., 2007; Towers and Hestrin, 2008; Trantham-Davidson et al., 2008; Zhou and Hablitz, 1999). On the other hand, D2-like DR have also been shown to promote excitability in FS interneurons (Tseng and O'Donnel, 2004; Wu and Hablitz, 2005). DA did not show any effect on IPSC amplitude and IEI in FS cells of LV in M1. None of the DR modulators or TRPC antagonists have influenced phasic currents. Please note that the traces presented in the results above belong to a single recording and the effect of a drug shown in an individual trace might not reflect in pooled data using statistical analysis. For example, TRPC antagonist, SKF96365, has shown no effect on amplitude and IEI of IPSCs in figure 6.19 but the IEI has seen to be decreased implying increases in IPSC events in figure 6.20. This could probably reflect various cell types surrounding FS cell that was recorded from and also various receptor subtypes expressed on the cell. Further cell type characterisation and interactions with neighbouring cells would be beneficial as well as increasing `n` numbers. Exploring IPSC shape and decay time of individual recordings would uncover interesting mechanisms.

Additionally, DA has shown influence neither on holding current nor on IPSC amplitude and IEI in pyramidal cells holding at -70 mV in our study. In vivo studies in rats and cats revealed that pyramidal neuron activity was decreased upon administration of DA mediated via both D1 and D2-like DR (Awenowicz and Porter, 2002; Huda et al., 2001). Pyramidal neurons in PFC have displayed a low event frequency (Hajos et al., 2003). Vitrac et al., (2014) have reported that DA enhances event rate of pyramidal neurons via D2 –like DRs which is in
line with excitation effect pyramidal neuron in LV of adult mice PFC mediated by D2-like DR (Gee et al., 2012). However, DA has been reported to exhibit bi-directional modulation on PFC pyramidal neurons (Seamans et al., 2001). In their study, DA decreased the IPSC amplitude via D2-like DR in 2-20 min time period with a subsequent increase in IPSC amplitude which was mediated via D1-like DR with 20-40 min after DA application. In our current study the drug effect was analysed after 20 min of DA application which means insufficient time was given to investigate bi-directional effect of DA on FS cells in LV of M1. Also, it is presently not known whether DA mediated effects on pyramidal cells are mediated by direct actions onto pyramidal cells or via modulations of interneurons. Hence, further exploration is required to study the DA effect on pyramidal-interneuron possibly via dual patching technique.

6.3.3 DA mediated inward current ($I_{DA}$) is independent on $I_h$ in FS cells

The inwardly rectifying hyperpolarization-activated current ($I_h$) is mediated by the flow of Na$^+$ and K$^+$ ions via hyperpolarisation activated and cyclic nucleotide-gated channels (HCN), which open at potentials more negative than -50 mV and are classified as a non-specific cation conducting channels (Pape, 1996; Robinson & Siegelbaum, 2003; Biel et al. 2009; Shah et al., 2010). These channels (HCN1-4 subunits) are expressed in thalamic relay neurons (McCormick and Pape, 1990a; McCormick and Pape, 1990b), hippocampus, neocortex, brain stem (Moosmang et al., 1999; Notomi & Shigemoto, 2004). DA was implicated in modulating $I_h$ in rat ventral tegmental neurons (Jiang et al., 1993), in interneurons in LI of neocortex (Wu and Hablitz, 2005), in relay neurons in the dorsal geniculate nucleus (dLGN) Govindaiah and Cox, 2005). This is based on the fact that HCN channels are regulated by intracellular cyclic nucleotide levels (Chen et al., 2001) and dopamine receptor activation is known to alter intracellular cAMP levels (Missale et al., 1998). To test the possibility of $I_h$ in mediating effect on DA induced inward current, we have used a selective hyperpolarisation-activated cyclic nucleotide-gated channel antagonist, ZD7288. In the presence of ZD7288, application of DA still induced $I_{DA}$ suggesting $I_{DA}$ independent of $I_h$. This finding is in line with study in neurons of subthalamic nucleus (STN) (Loucif et al., 2008).

6.3.4 $I_{DA}$ was fully reversed by TRPC antagonists in FS cells

The transient receptor potential canonical (TRPC) channels are widely distributed in the brain (Strubing et al., 2001; Riccio et al., 2002). TRPC is a family of 7 proteins (TRPC1-TRPC7) that mediates a diverse group of non-selective cation currents (Harteneck et al., 2000; Clapham et al., 2001). A study performed in dorsal raphe serotonin neurons has revealed the involvement of DA mediated depolarisation or inward current (Aman et al., 2007). To test the possibility of activation of cation channels via DAR in FS interneurons in
LV of M1, we have investigated the effect of TRPC antagonists, 2APB and SKF96365 (Li et al., 1999; Clapham et al., 2001) on \( I_{DA} \). Both these drugs strongly reduced the amplitude of \( I_{DA} \) even beyond the baseline when bath applied. Subsequent bath application of Bic has revealed further \( I_{\text{tonic}} \) leading to further questions for future work.

Evidence exists that activation of D2-like DAR in accumbens has induced an inward current by suppressing a potassium conductance (Uchimura et al., 1986; Higashi et al., 1989). This may not be true in our case as the IPSC solution contained CsCl which blocks potassium channels but could be ruled out by investigating the ability of DA to induce inward current by using cesium gluconate based internal solution and in the presence of extracellular cesium which block most potassium channels. The current-voltage plots using current clamp technique would provide more clues about the relationship before and after DA application. The other possible way to confirm that \( I_{DA} \) is mediated by cations is by replacing sodium chloride extracellular solution with choline chloride as shown in a study by Aman et al., 2006. In their study, reducing sodium levels have shown a reduction in amplitude of \( I_{DA} \) as well as a negative shift of the reversal potential of \( I_{DA} \). Moreover, the mechanism of \( I_{DA} \) induction can be investigated by using several second messenger modulators (Gi inhibitors).

There is growing evidence that DA modulates \( I_{\text{tonic}} \) in various regions of brain like striatal medium spiny neurons (Janssen et al., 2009), ventrobasal thalamus (Yague et al., 2013) and medium spiny neurons (MSNs) of the nucleus accumbens (Maguire et al., 2014). In striatum, D1-like DR expressing MSNs display tonic current mediated by \( \delta \) subunit containing GABA\(_{\text{A}}\)R (Ade et al., 2008; Kirmse et al., 2008). Recent study has reported that DA directly modulates GABA\(_{\text{A}}\)R that are present both synaptic and extra-synaptic sites (Hoerbelt et al., 2015). This could possibly be the case with FS interneurons in M1 in our study but further experiments are necessary to prove DA modulation of \( I_{\text{tonic}} \). This could be examined by observing if DA induces any inward currents in the presence of both GABAR antagonist and TRPC antagonist. Also, there exists a definite need for specific drugs targeting subunit specific GABA-DA interactions. Besides examining an constitutively active DA currents, another interesting aspect to investigate in order to uncover the mechanisms of \( I_{DA} \) is to investigate the effect of AMPH on holding current of whole cell recording as well as on \( I_{DA} \) based on the evidence that DA release is augmented by AMPH (Daberkow et al., 2013, see review Calipiri and Ferris, 2013).
6.3.5 Final conclusions

Dopamine augmented an inward current in fast spiking interneurons in layer V of primary motor cortex via non-selective cation currents mediated by TRPC channels independent of $I_h$ current via D2-like DAR. This suggests an absent role of D1-like DAR in $I_{DA}$ and this could be further investigated by bath application of DR antagonists to test if there are any constitutively active currents.
7 General discussions, conclusions and future work
Initial investigations in the lab (Yamawaki, 2008) using coronal sensorimotor slices that are obtained from decapitated animals using standard storage glucose-based aCSF and the cutting aCSF was sucrose-based which contained neuro-protectants such as indomethacin, a cyclooxygenase inhibitor. There was no spontaneous activity in these slices, however, bath application of KA (400 nM) and CCh (50 µM) (as used by Buhl et al., 1998) induced beta oscillations consistent with previous in-vivo studies (Murthy and Fetz, 1992; Baker et al., 1997; Jensen et al., 2005). Therefore, we have recently developed a novel slice preparation method (details in section 3.3) (Prokic et al., 2011) by adding ascorbate, taurine and NAC. Also, indomethacin, uric acid and ascorbic acid and aminoguanidine were added to modified aCSF as neuro-protectants which aided preservation of inhibitory neurons critical for maintenance of rhythmic network activity. We determined to use the same slice preparation to induce oscillatory activity and to explore rhythms generated in both M1 and S1 at varied frequency ranges, with a view to exploring potential interactions between M1 and S1 in the functionally connected sagittal cortical slice. However, the mechanisms involved the usage of neuro-protectants have not been explored yet.

Co-application of KA and CCh reliably induced theta and gamma oscillations in both M1 and S1 which were stable for 3-4 hrs in line with other in vitro studies (Dickinson et al., 2003). Basic pharmacology performed using various receptor modulators has revealed the contributions of GABA$_\alpha$R, NMDAR, AMPAR and DAR. Gamma oscillations were decreased by GABA$_\alpha$R antagonists (gabazine and picrotoxin) and also by AMPAR antagonist (SYM2206), whilst increasing theta power in these cases. GABA$_\alpha$R antagonist (CGP55845), GABA positive modulators such as diazepam, zolpidem, NMDAR antagonist (MK 801) and mGluR antagonists have shown an increase in both theta and gamma oscillations (Johnson et al., 2017). Theta and gamma oscillations were found reliant on gap junctions as the activity was abolished when carbenoxolone, a gap junction blocker was bath applied (Johnson et al., 2017) consistent with beta oscillations in M1 (Yamawaki et al., 2008) and delta oscillations (chapter 4). Dependence of oscillatory activity on mAchR in M1 is reflected by the fact that the induction of oscillatory activity requires CCh. (Johnson et al., 2017) along with KA and was further demostrated by bath application of mAchR antagonist. Atropine abolished both theta and gamma oscillations (Johnson et al., 2017) in consistent with various studies (Konopacki et al., 1987; Lukatch and Maclver, 1997; Buhl et al., 1998; Fisahn et al., 1998).

Interactions between two different types of oscillations is defined as cross-frequency coupling (CFC). In the current study, PAC was performed between theta and gamma oscillations, with theta frequency (3 –10 Hz) as phase and gamma frequency (25-50 Hz) as amplitude that was driven by low frequency using a MATLAB script developed by Tort et al., 2010. PAC was performed on 60 s epochs of data in various slice types (refer methods
section) and was represented as Modulation Index (MI) which indicates the degree of coupling between the two oscillations. It is interesting to note that isolated M1 slice type shows high MI. The presence of PV+ interneurons in deep layers of M1 could form the basis for high coupling in M1 based on the evidence that PV+ interneurons contribute to the generation and coupling of theta and gamma oscillations since selective removal of fast synaptic inhibition from PV+ cells using transgenic mouse protocols did not induce theta and gamma oscillations (Wulff et al., 2009). However, the extent of coupling varied with each slice. This is probably caused by biological differences such as viability of each slice, receptor expression, interneurons and pyramidal cell expression in each slice obtained daily. As each subtype fire at distinct patterns (phase) each subtype of interneurons probably has a unique role in entraining nested rhythms in various regions. Hence, the need for further investigations is high in order to uncover possible mechanisms behind the coupling.

The interlaminar (deep and superficial layers) synchrony within human cortex is linked to the degree of coupling between the theta and gamma oscillations (PAC) (MacGinn and Valiante, 2014) which needs further investigation in our slices. Also, pharmacological agents such as ketamine have been shown to influence PAC (Caixeta et al., 2013). Therefore, it is essential to perform PAC before and after various receptor modulators to identify how they are contributing PAC giving plenty of room for future work. Interestingly, human hippocampus and cortex exhibited different properties in that PAC in hippocampus was the strongest at the phase of slow theta band (2.5-5 Hz) and both low (35-70 Hz) and high gamma (70-130 Hz) whilst, the phase of high theta band (4-9 Hz) was preferred with low gamma exhibiting greater coupling in cortex (Lega et al., 2016). This observation may prove the difference of hippocampal theta oscillations between humans (< 5Hz) and rats (6-12Hz) (Lega et al., 2012; Watrous et al., 2013; Jacobs et al., 2014) and may reflect the big brain size in humans. It would be beneficial to apply these frequency specific studies in the PAC data that was obtained in M1 and S1 of rat slices.

Although much literature is documented the origin of delta oscillations (1-4 Hz) in thalamus (Amzica et al., 1992), relatively less is known about cortical based delta oscillations. A delta rhythm of purely cortical origin has been implicated in in vivo studies (Amzica and Steriade, 1998; Fell et al., 2002) but the mechanisms underlying were not as clear as those of thalamic origin (Pirchio et al., 1997; Hughes et al., 1999; 2002). A study has revealed that transition of NREM2 to NREM3&4 stages has required the neuromodulatory action of cortex itself but not thalamus (Krishnan et al., 2016). We have assumed that the origin of delta oscillations could possibly be primary motor and sensory cortices with these regions being primary projection sites for thalamus, hence the term ‘primary’. A recent in vitro study has indicated delta oscillations in secondary somatosensory cortex/parietal area, S2/Par2 slices prepared from male Wistar rats (Carracedo et al., 2013). None of these studies have
indicated the mechanisms and origin of cortical delta rhythm probably because it is challenging to induce delta oscillations unlike gamma oscillations, which can be identified spontaneously or with minimal pharmacological manipulations. Anatomical studies have shown that M1 receives input from S1 and thalamus (Zin-Ka-Leu, 1998; Miyachi et al., 2005) and the highly reciprocal nature of functional connections between M1 and S1 have been demonstrated in an optimum plane sensorimotor slice preparation developed by Rocco et al., (2007). Sensorimotor integration has been studied in vivo (Smith et al., 1983; Wannier et al., 1991) but this does not enable a full understanding of the pathways.

Delta oscillations are pharmacologically induced in layer V of M1 and S1 by maintaining low cholinergic and low dopaminergic tone which is the characteristic in deep sleep stages and we have illustrated the transition from fast (gamma and theta) oscillations to slow (mu and beta) oscillations before a high amplitude delta rhythm emerged. Delta rhythm was characterised using various receptor modulators to determine the role of various receptors in rhythm generation. The current study suggests that these delta oscillations in both regions are dependent on GABAR, AMPAR, KAR, mAChR and gap junctions but are independent of NMDAR. mGluR do not seem to show much contribution in generation of delta rhythm however mGluR agonists showed a general reduction in the activity whilst the antagonists showed an increase in the activity which is significant only in case of group I mGluR antagonists (MPEP & MTEP). These suggestions were based on pharmacology performed using various receptor modulators.

Our current study (chapter 4 and 5) performed in LV of M1 and S1 demonstrates the generation of delta oscillations by pharmacological manipulations and investigates the contribution of various receptors involved in the rhythm generation and the pharmacological equivalent awake state. Characterisation of delta rhythm in control slice preparations may facilitate understanding of the mechanisms underlying various pathological conditions like Alzheimer’s disease. Further research may be extended to comparing to a disease model and also examine delta in other regions such as V1. However, further work on characterisation of cell types recruited in generation of delta oscillations using calcium imaging and optogenetic techniques, would enable a better understanding of the mechanistic origin of the rhythm. Expression of receptors, receptor subtypes and receptor subunit could be of a great benefit using immunochemical studies and two-photon microscopy studies so that live cells can be imaged for extended time periods in deep tissue. The advantages of using two photon microscopy imaging technique are their is little damage to the surrounding tissue. Also, the contribution of various receptors could be confirmed using KO animal models. Additionally, it was believed LV to be the origin but this was not completely ruled out and it was evident that LVI has several cell types that could
contribute to rhythm generation. To address this tissue we should find a way to delineate LV and LVI and Grainger causality analysis might help address this issue.

Topographic maps of both M1 and S1 are well established (Brooks et al., 1961, Woolsey 1952, Li and Waters 1991) and interactions between these two regions are known to play critical roles in motor learning and control skills (Asanuma and Arissian, 1984; Asanuma and Pavlides, 1997). The origin of delta oscillations from deep layers of M1 could mean that the retrograde and anterograde connections between the two regions do not contribute to initiation of deep sleep states. However, these connections may have a role in maintenance of delta oscillations since S1 followed M1 with a significant delay in intact slice (type A and E). The neuronal populations that were recruited for delta rhythm generation might be just resident in M1 and not in S1. For instance, betz cells were implicated in layer V of M1 (Betz, 1894). These cells are unique in their morphology and may appear as both pyramidal and interneurons (Braak, 1976). Based on this it is logical to say that M1 is the source of origin for delta oscillations. However, S1 has been identified to lead M1 at higher frequencies but both regions have individual rhythm generators. Nevertheless, further histological and immuno-labelling studies to determine the types of cells and receptor types that were involved in generation of delta oscillations and functional connectivity studies between two regions would be beneficial to further address this issue. Preparing slices in different plane other than sagittal would preserve thalamus and /or M2, S2 besides M1 and S1 and would provide an opportunity to investigate the influence of thalamus (if any) in delta, theta and gamma rhythm generation. Also, characterising cell types involved in each oscillation using optogenetic studies would give a better insight. Also, region specific stimulation studies may reveal the individual region contribution. Another way to look at is multi electrode recording which enables to examine the navigation pattern of oscillations between layers as well as between regions (for instance M1 and S1). Our current study is limited in terms of making cuts between regions during the experiments but if there is a secure way to perform cut, that would demonstrate the interaction between regions.

In the current study, DA modulated network activity at delta, theta and gamma frequencies. D1-like DR are more abundant than D2-like DR in rat cortex. DA effects on FS interneurons have been identified to be mediated by PKA-dependent suppression of leak, inward rectifying, and depolarisation-activated two pore domain K+ channels (Gorelova et al., 2002) and amplification of depolarising currents mediated by HCN channels (via Gs)Gorelova et al., 2002; Trantham-Davidson et al., 2008; Wu and Hablitz, 2005). Additionally, many reports have indicated that DA modulates GABAR. Here (chapter 6), we determined the effect of DA on pyramidal cells and FS interneurons in LV of M1 slices using voltage clamp, whole cell recordings. FS cells were identified as based on the morphological features as described by Prokic et al., (2015) and are known to be highly encountered in deep layers.
forming Betz cell-FS cell pairing. Our investigations revealed that DA induced a slow inward current via non-specific cation TRPC channels. Morphological, functional and electrical properties of cell types in M1 needs further examination using whole cell voltage clamp as well as current clamp techniques. Since, Betz-FS cell pairing was observed in LV of M1, dual patch recordings would uncover the mechanistic insights on how one cell interacts with the other. Also, stimulation techniques may be incorporated to observe how one cell type impacts on another cell type. Additionally, there is growing evidence that DA modulates $I_{\text{tonic}}$ in various regions of brain. Given the link between $I_{\text{tonic}}$ and delta subunit within extra synaptic GABA receptor complexes (Nusser et al., 1998), this can be addressed by using the delta subunit-selective agonist, THIP in the experiments. On an interesting note, D2 mediated $I_{DA}$ could account for changes in theta and gamma oscillations when DA and amphetamine were bath applied. It will be interesting to see if the oscillations were modulated by TRPC antagonists.

In conclusion, trans-cardial perfusion, sagittal slice preparation, modified aCSF solution as well as addition of neuro-protectants has greatly enhanced the slice viability. Co-application of KA and CCh induced persistent theta and gamma oscillations. These dual oscillations seem to have distinct mechanisms and were identified to be coupled from PAC analysis. However, the percentage of coupling varied in various types of slice preparations with high modulation index (MI) in M1 only slice followed by S1 only slice when compared to intact slice preparations. To our knowledge, this is the first demonstration of motor cortical delta oscillation in vitro which was identified to have a distinct mechanism in comparison with that of delta in secondary somatosensory/parietal area (S2/Par2) (also in vitro) (Carracedo et al., 2013) These extracellular studies could prove significant in investigating neuronal network oscillations in pathological states such as PD, AD by using animal models that can enable the comparison of mechanisms. Delta oscillations were induced by KA, CCh, D1 and D2 antagonists and are reliant on both inhibitory and excitatory network activity. Pharmacologically induced delta oscillations were identified to be irreversible since the frequency of the oscillations had not changed when pharmacologically equivalent awake state was maintained possibly due to experimental limitations. This may imply the need other inhibitory input to reverse delta such as from thalamus. Therefore, a slice preparation with both cortex and thalamus preserved would probably enable delta reversal. Delta oscillations in S1 are dependent on both inhibitory and excitatory networks similar to that of in M1. A significant time delay in occurrence and phase lag that was observed in correlation studies performed in various slice preparations revealed M1 as the rhythm generator. Inability of S1 to generate delta oscillations on its own suggests that S1 follows M1 at delta frequency However, both M1 and S1 have local generators at nested theta and gamma band. Dopamine augmented an inward current in fast spiking interneurons in layer V of
primary motor cortex via non-selective cation currents mediated by TRPC channels independent on $I_h$ current via D2-like DAR without affecting IPSC amplitude and IEI.

8 References

Aeschbach D, Borbely AA. 1993. All-night dynamics of the human sleep EEG. Journal of sleep research 2: 70-81
Barbas H. 2015. General cortical and special prefrontal connections: principles from structure to function. Annual review of neuroscience 38: 269-89

Baude A, Nusser Z, Roberts JD, Mulvihill E, McIlhinney RA, Somogyi P. 1993. The metabotropic glutamate receptor (mGluR1 alpha) is concentrated at perisynaptic membrane of neuronal subpopulations as detected by immunogold reaction. *Neuron* 11: 771-87


putative glutamate receptor: a low affinity kainate-binding subunit. *Neuron* 8: 257-65


Bornschlegl M, Asanuma H. 1987. Importance of the projection from the sensory to the motor cortex for recovery of motor function following partial thalamic lesion in the monkey. *Brain research* 437: 121-30


Bowery NG, Hudson AL. Price GW. 1987. GABAA and GABAB receptor site distribution in the rat central nervous system. *Neuroscience* 20: 365-83


Brickley SG, Cull-Candy SG, Farrant M. 1996. Development of a tonic form of synaptic inhibition in rat cerebellar granule cells resulting from persistent activation of GABAA


Clancy B, Cauller LJ. 1999. Widespread projections from subgriseal neurons (layer VII) to
Crunelli V, Hughes SW. 2010. The slow (<1 Hz) rhythm of non-REM sleep: a dialogue between three cardinal oscillators. *Nat Neurosci* 13: 9-17


de Kock CP, Sakmann B. 2008. High frequency action potential bursts (>or= 100 Hz) in L2/3 and L5B thick tufted neurons in anaesthetized and awake rat primary somatosensory cortex. *The Journal of physiology* 586: 3353-64


Di Chiara G, Bassareo V. 2007. Reward system and addiction: what dopamine does and
doesn't do. *Current opinion in pharmacology* 7: 69-76


Elul R. 1971. The genesis of the EEG. *International review of neurobiology* 15: 227-72


Farkas T, Kis Z, Toldi J, Wolff JR. 1999. Activation of the primary motor cortex by somatosensory stimulation in adult rats is mediated mainly by associative connections from the somatosensory cortex. *Neuroscience* 90: 353-61

Farrant M, Nusser Z. 2005. Variations on an inhibitory theme: phasic and tonic activation of
GABA(A) receptors. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 6: 215-29

Feinberg I, Campbell IG. 1998. Haloperidol potentiates the EEG slowing of MK-801 despite blocking its motor effects: implications for the PCP model of schizophrenia. *Neuroreport* 9: 2189-93


Fellous JM, Sejnowski TJ. 2000. Cholinergic induction of oscillations in the hippocampal slice in the slow (0.5-2 Hz), theta (5-12 Hz), and gamma (35-70 Hz) bands. *Hippocampus* 10: 187-97


Fishell G, Rudy B. 2011. Mechanisms of inhibition within the telencephalon: "where the wild things are". *Annual review of neuroscience* 34: 535-67


Ford JM, Roach BJ, Hoffman RS, Mathalon DH. 2008. The dependence of P300 amplitude on gamma synchrony breaks down in schizophrenia. *Brain research* 1235: 133-42


Frerking M, Malenka RC, Nicoll RA. 1998. Synaptic activation of kainate receptors on
hippocampal interneurons. *Nat Neurosci* 1: 479-86
Fukuda T, Kosaka T. 2003. Ultrastructural study of gap junctions between dendrites of parvalbumin-containing GABAergic neurons in various neocortical areas of the adult rat. *Neuroscience* 120: 5-20
Geiger JR, Melcher T, Koh DS, Sakmann B, Seeburg PH, et al. 1995. Relative abundance of subunit mRNAs determines gating and Ca2+ permeability of AMPA receptors in
principal neurons and interneurons in rat CNS. *Neuron* 15: 193-204


Grenier F, Timofeev I, Steriade M. 2001. Focal synchronization of ripples (80-200 Hz) in
neocortex and their neuronal correlates. *Journal of neurophysiology* 86: 1884-98
Guntekin B, Saatci E, Yener G. 2008. Decrease of evoked delta, theta and alpha coherences in Alzheimer patients during a visual oddball paradigm. *Brain research* 1235: 109-16
Gurden H, Takita M, Jay TM. 2000. Essential role of D1 but not D2 receptors in the NMDA receptor-dependent long-term potentiation at hippocampal-prefrontal cortex synapses in vivo. *J Neurosci* 20: Rc106
Haas KF, Macdonald RL. 1999. GABA(A) receptor subunit γ2 and δ subtypes confer unique kinetic properties on recombinant GABA(A) receptor currents in mouse fibroblasts. *The Journal of Physiology* 514: 27-45

223


Hestrin S. 1993. Different glutamate receptor channels mediate fast excitatory synaptic currents in inhibitory and excitatory cortical neurons. Neuron 11: 1083-91


Hoffer ME, Goldstein B, Shulman A. 2013. New concepts in electrophysiology and tinnitus. The international tinnitus journal 18: 6-15


Holscher C, Gigg J, O'Mara SM. 1999. Metabotropic glutamate receptor activation and blockade: their role in long-term potentiation, learning and neurotoxicity. *Neuroscience and biobehavioral reviews* 23: 399-410


Hughes SW, Cope DW, Tóth TI, Williams SR, Crunelli V. 1999. All thalamocortical neurones possess a T-type Ca(2+) 'window' current that enables the expression of bistability-mediated activities. *The Journal of Physiology* 517: 805-15


Iversen LL. 2010. Dopamine handbook.


Jasper HH, Andrews HL. 1938. BRAIN POTENTIALS AND VOLUNTARY MUSCLE ACTIVITY IN MAN. *Journal of Neurophysiology* 1: 87-100


Laser-Pulse Photolysis Technique. Biochemistry 38: 11372-78

Jensen JL, Marstrand PC, Nielsen JB. 2005. Motor skill training and strength training are associated with different plastic changes in the central nervous system. Journal of applied physiology (Bethesda, Md. : 1985) 99: 1558-68


Johansson RS, Westling G. 1984. Roles of glabrous skin receptors and sensorimotor memory in automatic control of precision grip when lifting rougher or more slippery objects. Experimental Brain Research 56: 550-64

Johnson NW. 2017. Mechanistic insights into neuronal oscillatory activity in the dopamine-intact and dopamine-depleted primary motor cortex. Aston University


Kaila K. 1994. Ionic basis of GABAA receptor channel function in the nervous system. Progress in neurobiology 42: 489-537


Kaneda M, Farrant M, Cull-Candy SG. 1995. Whole-cell and single-channel currents


Kaneko T. 2013. Local connections of excitatory neurons in motor-associated cortical areas of the rat. *Front Neural Circuits* 7: 75


Kattler H, Dijk DJ, Borbely AA. 1994. Effect of unilateral somatosensory stimulation prior to sleep on the sleep EEG in humans. *Journal of sleep research* 3: 159-64


Kawaguchi YK, Y. 1997. "GABAergic cell subtypes and their synaptic connections in rat frontal cortex", *Cerebral Cortex* 7: 476-86


Kirov SA, Sorra KE, Harris KM. 1999. Slices have more synapses than perfusion-fixed hippocampus from both young and mature rats. J Neurosci 19: 2876-86
Knyazev GG. 2012. EEG delta oscillations as a correlate of basic homeostatic and motivational processes. Neuroscience and biobehavioral reviews 36: 677-95
Koch C, Poggio T. 1999. Predicting the visual world: silence is golden. Nat Neurosci 2: 9-10
Kosar E, Waters RS, Tsukahara N, Asanuma H. 1985. Anatomical and physiological properties of the projection from the sensory cortex to the motor cortex in normal cats: the difference between corticocortical and thalamocortical projections. Brain research 345: 68-78

228
Kreiss DS, Anderson LA, Walters JR. 1996. Apomorphine and dopamine D(1) receptor agonists increase the firing rates of subthalamic nucleus neurons. *Neuroscience* 72: 863-76


Kryzhanovskii GN, Shandra AA, Godlevskii LS, Mikhailova, II. 1990. [Appearance of parkinsonian syndrome after administration of delta sleep-inducing peptide into the rat substantia nigra]. *Biulleten' eksperimental'noi biologii i meditsiny* 109: 119-21


Lavin A, Grace AA. 2001. Stimulation of D1-type dopamine receptors enhances excitability in prefrontal cortical pyramidal neurons in a state-dependent manner. *Neuroscience* 104: 335-46


Lewis DA, Hashimoto T, Volk DW. 2005. Cortical inhibitory neurons and schizophrenia. *Nat Rev Neurosci* 6: 312-24


Li HS, Xu XZ, Montell C. 1999. Activation of a TRPC3-dependent cation current through the neurotrophin BDNF. *Neuron* 24: 261-73


Lin LD, Murray GM, Sessle BJ. 1993. The effect of bilateral cold block of the primate face 230
primary somatosensory cortex on the performance of trained tongue-protrusion task and biting tasks. *Journal of neurophysiology* 70: 985-96

Lisman J. 2005. The theta/gamma discrete phase code occurring during the hippocampal phase precession may be a more general brain coding scheme. *Hippocampus* 15: 913-22


Mercer A, Bannister AP, Thomson AM. 2006. Electrical coupling between pyramidal cells
in adult cortical regions. *Brain cell biology* 35: 13-27


Missale C, Nash SR, Robinson SW, Jaber M, Caron MG. 1998. Dopamine receptors: from structure to function. *Physiological reviews* 78: 189-225


Moghaddam B. 2003. Bringing order to the glutamate chaos in schizophrenia. *Neuron* 40: 881-4


Monaghan DT, Bridges RJ, Cotman CW. 1989. The excitatory amino acid receptors: their classes, pharmacology, and distinct properties in the function of the central nervous system. *Annual review of pharmacology and toxicology* 29: 365-402


Monti JM, Monti D. 2007. The involvement of dopamine in the modulation of sleep and waking. *Sleep medicine reviews* 11: 113-33


Monyer H, Burnashev N, Laurie DJ, Sakmann B, Seeburg PH. 1994. Developmental and regional expression in the rat brain and functional properties of four NMDA
receptors. *Neuron* 12: 529-40
Mozrzymas JW. 2004. Dynamism of GABAA receptor activation shapes the “personality” of inhibitory synapses. *Neuropharmacology* 47: 945-60
Myme CI, Sugino K, Turrigiano GG, Nelson SB. 2003. The NMDA-to-AMPA ratio at synapses onto layer 2/3 pyramidal neurons is conserved across prefrontal and visual cortices. *Journal of neurophysiology* 90: 771-9


Porter LL. 1992. Patterns of projections from area 2 of the sensory cortex to area 3a and to the motor cortex in cats. *Experimental Brain Research* 91: 85-93


Ren K, Hylden JL, Williams GM, Ruda MA, Dubner R. 1992. The effects of a non-competitive NMDA receptor antagonist, MK-801, on behavioral hyperalgesia and
dorsal horn neuronal activity in rats with unilateral inflammation. *Pain* 50: 331-44
Rice ME, Perez-Pinzon MA, Lee EJ. 1994. Ascorbic acid, but not glutathione, is taken up by brain slices and preserves cell morphology. *Journal of neurophysiology* 71: 1591-6
Richfield EK, Penney JB, Young AB. 1989. Anatomical and affinity state comparisons between dopamine D1 and D2 receptors in the rat central nervous system. *Neuroscience* 30: 767-77
Rouiller EM, Moret V, Liang F. 1993. Comparison of the connectional properties of the two forelimb areas of the rat sensorimotor cortex: support for the presence of a premotor or supplementary motor cortical area. *Somatosensory & motor research* 10: 269-89


Schuepp DD, Johnson BG, Monn JA. 1992. Inhibition of cyclic AMP formation by a selective metabotropic glutamate receptor agonist. *Journal of neurochemistry* 58: 1184-6


Schultz D, Miller JC. 2004. Fatigue and use of go/no-go pills in extraordinarily long combat sorties. *Aviation, space, and environmental medicine* 75: 370-1


Seamans JK, Yang CR. 2004. The principal features and mechanisms of dopamine
modulation in the prefrontal cortex. Progress in neurobiology 74: 1-58
373-85
Sotero RC. 2016. Topology, Cross-Frequency, and Same-Frequency Band Interactions Shape the Generation of Phase-Amplitude Coupling in a Neural Mass Model of a Cortical Column. PLOS Computational Biology 12: e1005180
Spain WJ. 1994. Serotonin has different effects on two classes of Betz cells from the cat. Journal of neurophysiology 72: 1925-37
Stell BM, Mody I. 2002. Receptors with different affinities mediate phasic and tonic GABA(A) conductances in hippocampal neurons. J Neurosci 22: Rc223
Steriade M, Datta S, Pare D, Oakson G, Curro Dossi RC. 1990. Neuronal activities in brainstem cholinergic nuclei related to tonic activation processes in thalamocortical
system. J Neurosci 10: 2541-59
Steriade M, Nunez A, Amzica F. 1993. Intracellular analysis of relations between the slow (< 1 Hz) neocortical oscillation and other sleep rhythms of the electroencephalogram. J Neurosci 13: 3266-83
Sulzer D, Zecca L. 2000. Intraneuronal dopamine-quinone synthesis: a review. Neurotoxicity research 1: 181-95
Szabo GG, Holdereith N, Gulyas AI, Freund TF, Hajas N. 2010. Distinct synaptic properties of perisomatic inhibitory cell types and their different modulation by cholinergic receptor activation in the CA3 region of the mouse hippocampus. The European journal of neuroscience 31: 2234-46
Tao JX, Chen XJ, Baldwin M, Yung I, Rose S, et al. 2011. Interictal regional delta slowing is an EEG marker of epileptic network in temporal lobe epilepsy. Epilepsia 52: 467-


Thompson AM. 2010. Neocortical layer 6, a review. Frontiers in neuroanatomy


States of America 104: 13490-5


Trulson ME, Preussler DW, Howell GA. 1981. Activity of substantia nigra units across the sleep-waking cycle in freely moving cats. *Neuroscience letters* 26: 183-8


Uchimura N, Higashi H, Nishi S. 1986. Hyperpolarizing and depolarizing actions of dopamine via D-1 and D-2 receptors on nucleus accumbens neurons. *Brain*

Ursin R. 1968. The two stages of slow wave sleep in the cat and their relation to REM sleep. *Brain research* 11: 347-56


Wang XJ. 1993. Ionic basis for intrinsic 40 Hz neuronal oscillations. *Neuroreport* 5: 221-4


navigation. *Hippocampus* 23: 656-61


Woolsey CN. 1946. Contralateral, ipsilateral and bilateral representation of cutaneous
receptors in somatic areas I and II of the cerebral cortex of pig, sheep and other mammals. *Surgery* 19: 684--702


Wu JY, Prentice H. 2010. Role of taurine in the central nervous system. *Journal of biomedical science* 17 Suppl 1: S1


Xu TX, Yao WD. 2010. D1 and D2 dopamine receptors in separate circuits cooperate to drive associative long-term potentiation in the prefrontal cortex. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America* 107: 16366-71


Yang CR, Seamans JK. 1996. Dopamine D1 receptor actions in layers V-VI rat prefrontal


